Contents

A - Z

OWNER'S MANUAL

MINI COUNTRYMAN

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

COOPER
COOPER S
COOPER S ALL4

Congratulations on your new MINI

This Owner's Manual should be considered a permanent part of this vehicle. It should stay with the vehicle when sold to provide the next owner with important operating, safety and maintenance information.

We wish you an enjoyable driving experience.

MINI RECOMMENDS Castrol

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

© 2011 Bayerische Motoren Werke
Aktiengesellschaft
Munich, Germany
Reprinting, including excerpts, only with the
written consent of BMW AG, Munich.
US English II/11, 11 03 500
Printed on environmentally friendly paper,
bleached without chlorine, suitable for recycling.

CONTENTS

The fastest way to find information on a particular topic or item is by using the index, refer to page 236.

NOTES
4 General information
6 Reporting safety defects

AT A GLANCE
10 Cockpit
16 On-board computer
20 Letters and numbers
21 Voice activation system

CONTROLS
26 Opening and closing
37 Adjustments
43 Transporting children safely
46 Driving
55 Controls overview
66 Technology for driving comfort and safety
79 Lamps
83 Climate
88 Practical interior accessories

DRIVING TIPS
96 Things to remember when driving

NAVIGATION
108 Navigation system
109 Destination entry
118 Route guidance
126 What to do if…

ENTERTAINMENT
130 On/Off and tone
132 Radio
140 CD player
142 External devices

COMMUNICATIONS
154 Hands-free device Bluetooth
163 Mobile phone preparation Bluetooth
176 Office
183 MINI Connected

MOBILITY
188 Refueling
190 Wheels and tires
198 Under the hood
202 Maintenance
204 Care
208 Replacing components
218 Giving and receiving assistance

REFERENCE
224 Technical data
227 Short commands for the voice activation system
236 Everything from A to Z

GENERAL INFORMATION

USING THIS OWNER'S MANUAL

We have tried to make all the information in this Owner's Manual easy to find. The fastest way to find specific topics is to refer to the detailed index at the back of the manual. If you wish to gain an initial overview of your vehicle, you will find this in the first chapter.

Should you wish to sell your MINI at some time in the future, remember to hand over this Owner's Manual to the new owner; it is an important part of the vehicle.

Additional sources of information

Should you have any other questions, your MINI dealer will be glad to advise you at any time.

You can find more information about the MINI, for example on its technology, on the Internet at www.MINI.com.

SYMBOLS USED

Indicates precautions that must be followed precisely in order to avoid the possibility of personal injury and serious damage to the vehicle.◀

Indicates information that will assist you in gaining the optimum benefit from your vehicle and enable you to care more effectively for your vehicle.◀

Refers to measures that can be taken to help protect the environment.◀

◀ Marks the end of a specific item of information.

* Indicates special equipment, country-specific equipment and optional accessories, as well as equipment and functions not yet available at the time of printing.

"..." Identifies Control Display texts used to select individual functions.

›...‹ Verbal instructions to use with the voice activation system.

››...‹‹ Identifies the answers generated by the voice activation system.

Symbols on vehicle components

Indicates that you should consult the relevant section of this Owner's Manual for information on a particular part or assembly.

THE INDIVIDUAL VEHICLE

The manufacturer of your MINI is the Bayerische Motoren Werke Aktiengesellschaft, BMW AG.

When you ordered your MINI, you chose various items of equipment. This Owner's Manual describes the entire array of options and equipment that the manufacturer of your MINI makes available with a specific model range.

Bear in mind that the manual may contain information on accessories and equipment that you have not specified for your own vehicle. Sections describing options and special equipment are marked by asterisks * to assist you in identifying possible differences between the descriptions in this manual and your own vehicle's equipment.

If your MINI features equipment not described in this Owner's Manual, observe the enclosed Supplementary Owner's Manuals.

STATUS OF THIS OWNER'S MANUAL AT TIME OF PRINTING

The high level of safety and quality of MINI vehicles is ensured by continuous development. For this reason, it is possible in exceptional cases

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

that features described in this Owner's Manual could differ from those on your vehicle.

FOR YOUR SAFETY

Maintenance and repair

Advanced technology, e.g. the use of modern materials and powerful electronics, requires specially adapted maintenance and repair methods. Therefore, have the necessary work on your MINI only carried out by a MINI dealer or a workshop that has specially trained personnel working in accordance with the specifications of the MINI manufacturer. If this work is not carried out properly, there is a danger of subsequent damage and related safety hazards.◀

Parts and accessories

For your own safety, use genuine parts and accessories approved by the manufacturer of the MINI.

When you purchase accessories tested and approved by the manufacturer of the MINI and Original MINI Parts, you simultaneously acquire the assurance that they have been thoroughly tested by the manufacturer of the MINI to ensure optimum performance when installed on your vehicle.

The manufacturer of the MINI warrants these parts to be free from defects in material and workmanship.

The manufacturer of the MINI will not accept any liability for damage resulting from installation of parts and accessories not approved by the manufacturer of the MINI.

The manufacturer of the MINI cannot test every product made by other manufacturers to verify if it can be used on a MINI safely and without risk to either the vehicle, its operation, or its occupants.

Original MINI Parts, MINI Accessories and other products approved by the manufacturer of the MINI, together with professional advice on using these items, are available from all MINI dealers.

Installation and operation of accessories that have not been approved by the manufacturer of your MINI, such as alarms, radios, amplifiers, radar detectors, wheels, suspension components, brake dust shields, telephones, including operation of any mobile phone from within the vehicle without using an externally mounted antenna, or transceiver equipment, for instance, CBs, walkie-talkies, ham radios or similar accessories, may cause extensive damage to the vehicle, compromise its safety, interfere with the vehicle's electrical system or affect the validity of the MINI Limited Warranty. See your MINI dealer for additional information.◀

Maintenance, replacement, or repair of the emission control devices and systems may be performed by any automotive repair establishment or individual using any certified automotive part.◀

California Proposition 65 warning

California law requires us to issue the following warning:

Engine exhaust and a wide variety of automobile components and parts, including components found in the interior furnishings in a vehicle, contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects and reproductive harm. In addition, certain fluids contained in vehicles and certain products of component wear contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm.

Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds. Wash your hands after handling.

Used engine oil contains chemicals that have caused cancer in laboratory animals. Always protect your skin by washing thoroughly with soap and water.◀

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

SERVICE AND WARRANTY

We recommend that you read this publication thoroughly.

Your MINI is covered by the following warranties:

- ▷ New Vehicle Limited Warranty
- ▷ Rust Perforation Limited Warranty
- ▷ Federal Emissions System Defect Warranty
- ▷ Federal Emissions Performance Warranty
- ▷ California Emission Control System Limited Warranty

Detailed information about these warranties is listed in the Service and Warranty Information Booklet for US models or in the Warranty and Service Guide Booklet for Canadian models.

Your vehicle has been specifically adapted and designed to meet the particular operating conditions and homologation requirements in your country and continental region in order to deliver the full driving pleasure while the vehicle is operated under those conditions. If you wish to operate your vehicle in another country or region, you may be required to adapt your vehicle to meet different prevailing operating conditions and registration requirements. You should also be aware of any applicable warranty limitations or exclusions for such country or region. In such a case, please contact Customer Relations for further information.

Maintenance

Maintain the vehicle regularly to sustain road safety, operational reliability and the New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

Specifications for required maintenance measures:

- ▷ MINI Maintenance System
- ▷ Service and Warranty Information Booklet for US models
- ▷ Warranty and Service Guide Booklet for Canadian models

If the vehicle is not maintained according to these specifications, this could result in serious damage to the vehicle. Such damage is not covered by the MINI New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

REPORTING SAFETY DEFECTS

For US customers

The following applies only to vehicles owned and operated in the US.

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect that could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration, NHTSA, in addition to notifying MINI of North America, LLC, P.O. Box 1227, Westwood, New Jersey 07675-1227, Telephone 1-800-831-1117.

If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of vehicles, it may order a recall and remedy campaign. However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your dealer, or MINI of North America, LLC.

To contact NHTSA, you may call the Vehicle Safety Hotline toll-free at 1-888-327-4236 (TTY: 1-800-424-9153); go to http://www.safercar.gov; or write to: Administrator, NHTSA, 400 Seventh Street, SW., Washington, DC 20590. You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from http://www.safercar.gov

For Canadian customers

Canadian customers who wish to report a safety-related defect to Transport Canada, Defect Investigations and Recalls, may telephone the toll-free hotline 1-800-333-0510. You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from http://www.tc.gc.ca/roadsafety.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

NOTES

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

WATCH ME.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

AT A GLANCE

CONTROLS

DRIVING TIPS

NAVIGATION

ENTERTAINMENT

COMMUNICATIONS

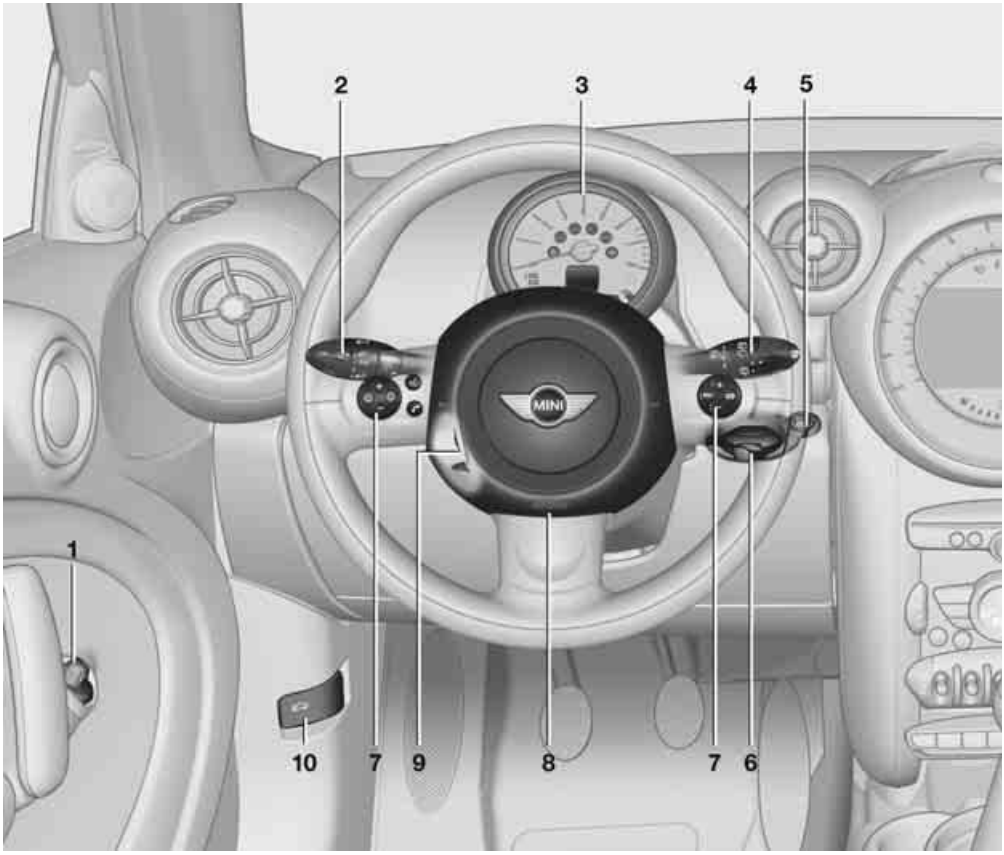
MOBILITY

REFERENCE

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

COCKPIT

AROUND THE STEERING WHEEL: CONTROLS AND DISPLAYS



1 Adjusting the exterior mirrors, folding them in and out* 41

2 Parking lamps 79

Low beams 79

Automatic headlamp control * 79

Adaptive Light Control* 80

Turn signals 50

High beams 81

Headlamp flasher 50

Roadside parking lamps* 81

Computer* 56

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

3 Tachometer 12

Instrument lighting 81

TRIP 0.0 Resetting the trip odometer 55

4 Wiper system 51

5 START ENGINE STOP Switching the ignition on/off and starting/stopping the engine 46

6 Ignition lock 46

7 Buttons* on steering wheel

RES Continuing cruise control* 53

Right:
Storing speed and accelerating or decelerating

Left:
Increase or reduce volume

I/O Activating/deactivating cruise control* 53

Telephone*:

Press: accepting and ending a call, starting dialing* of selected phone number and redialing if no phone number is selected

Activating/deactivating voice activation system* 21

Changing the radio station
Selecting a music track
Scrolling through the redial list

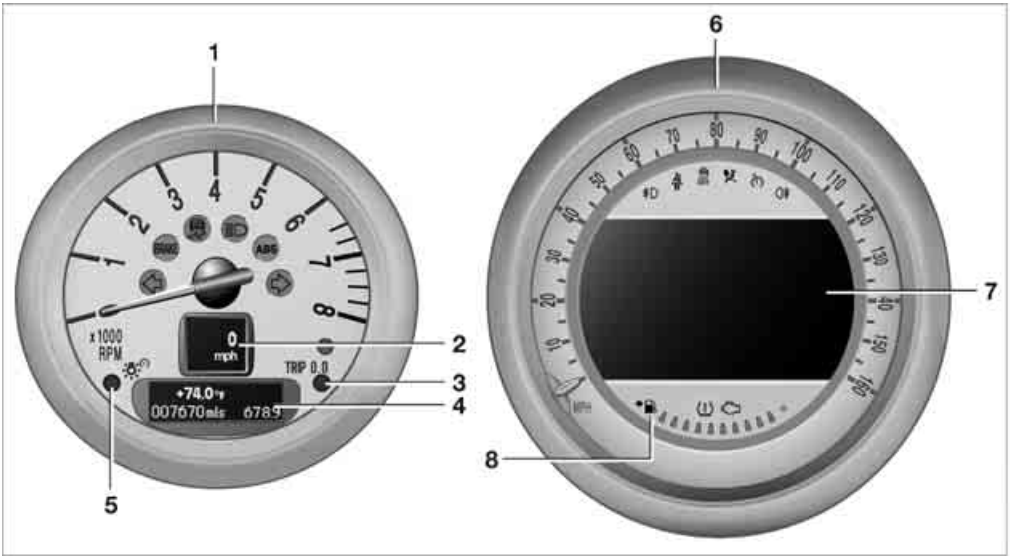
8 Horn: the entire surface

9 Adjusting the steering wheel 42

10 Releasing the hood 198

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

DISPLAYS



1 Tachometer 55
With indicator and warning lamps 13

2 Display for
- ▷ Current vehicle speed 55
- ▷ Indicator and warning lamps 13

3 Resetting the trip odometer 55

4 Display for
- ▷ Position of automatic transmission* 48
- ▷ Computer* 56
- ▷ Date of next scheduled service, and remaining distance to be driven 59
- ▷ Odometer and trip odometer 55
- ▷ Settings and information 57
- ▷ Personal Profile settings 26

5 Instrument lighting 81

6 Speedometer
With indicator and warning lamps 13

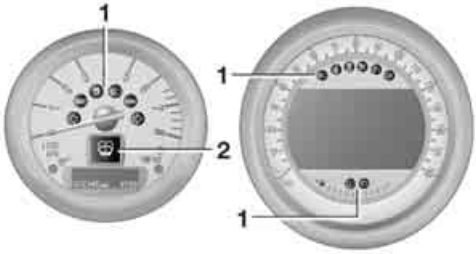
7 Control Display 17

8 Fuel gauge 55

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

INDICATOR AND WARNING LAMPS

The concept

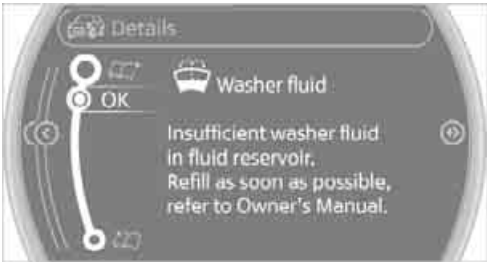


Indicator and warning lamps can light up in various combinations and colors in indicator area **1** or **2**.

Some lamps are checked for proper functioning and thus come on briefly when the engine is started or the ignition is switched on.

Explanatory text messages

Text messages at the upper edge of the Control Display explain the meaning of the displayed indicator and warning lamps.



You can call up more information, e.g. on the cause of a malfunction and on how to respond, via Check Control, page 62.

In urgent cases, this information will be shown as soon as the corresponding lamp lights up.

Indicator lamps without text messages

The following indicator lamps in display area **1** indicate certain functions:

High beams/headlamp flasher 81

Fog lamps* 81

Lamp flashes:
DSC or DTC* regulates the drive forces in order to maintain driving stability 67

Parking brake applied 47

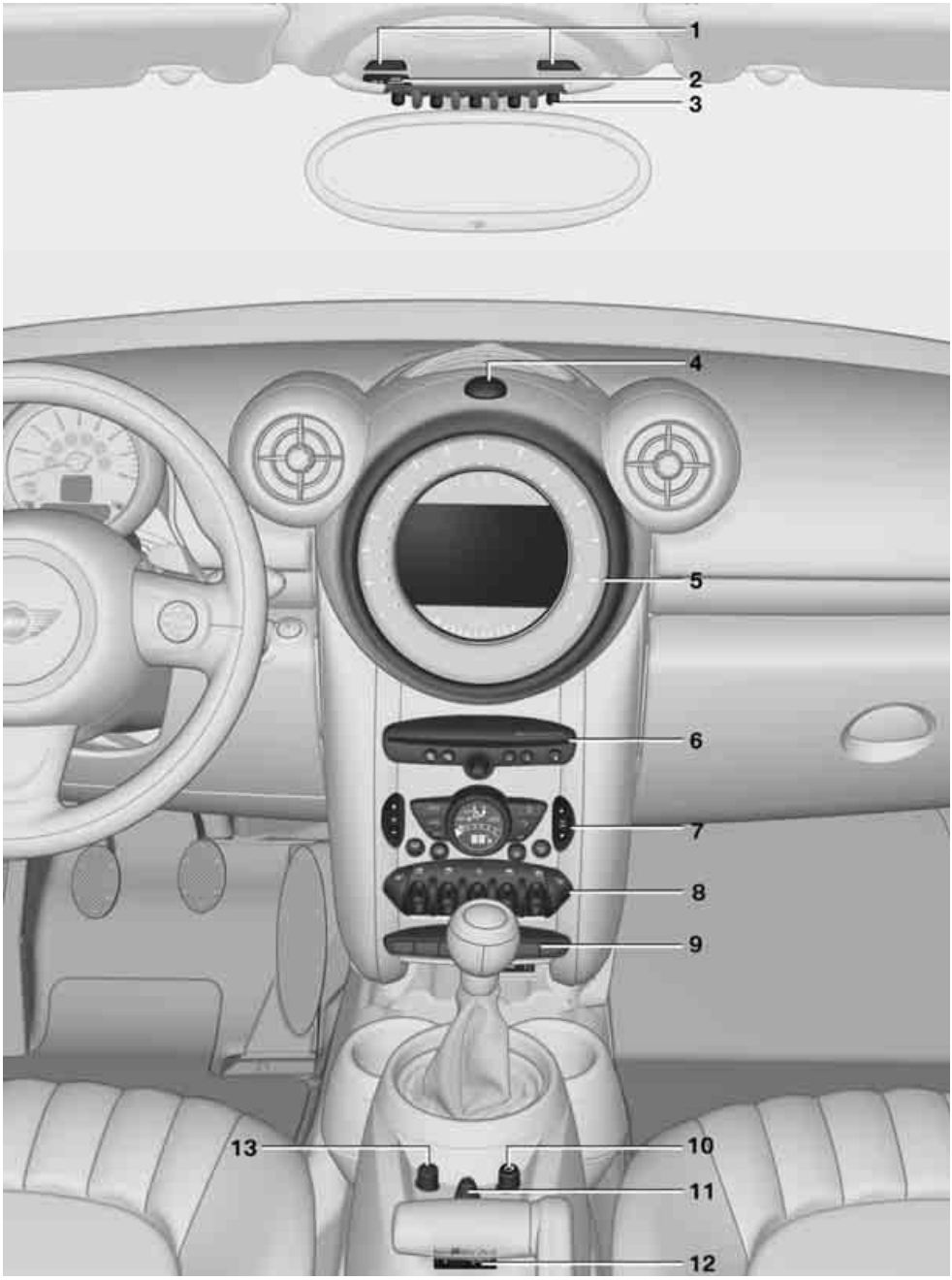
Engine malfunction with adverse effect on exhaust emissions 203

Cruise control 53

Turn signals 50

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

AROUND THE CENTER CONSOLE



Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

1 Microphone for voice activation system* and for telephone in hands-free mode*

2 Indicator/warning lamp* for front passenger airbags 77

3
- Reading lamps* 82
- Ambient lighting* 82
- Glass roof, electric* 34
- Interior lamps 82

4 Hazard warning flashers

5 Speedometer 12

6 Radio/CD 132
- Changing the radio station or track
- Changing the audio source
- AM FM Selecting waveband

7 Air conditioner or automatic climate control* 83
- Temperature
- Recirculated-air mode
- Air distribution for air conditioner
- Air distribution to the windshield*
- Air distribution to the upper body area*
- Air distribution to the footwell*
- AUTO Automatic air distribution and flow rate*
- MAX Maximum cooling*
- Cooling function
- Defrosting windows*
- Rear window defroster
- Windshield heating*
- Air flow rate

8 Switches in the center console
- Seat heating* 40
- Power windows, front 35
- Power windows, rear 35
- Central locking system, inside 30

9 Buttons in the center console
- Fog lamps* 81
- Safety switch for power windows in rear passenger compartment 36
- SPORT Sport button* 69
- OFF Driving stability control systems Dynamic Stability Control DSC 67 Dynamic Traction Control DTC* 68

10 Changing to a different menu on the Control Display 17

11 MINI joystick 16
Move in four directions, turn or press

12 USB audio interface* 143

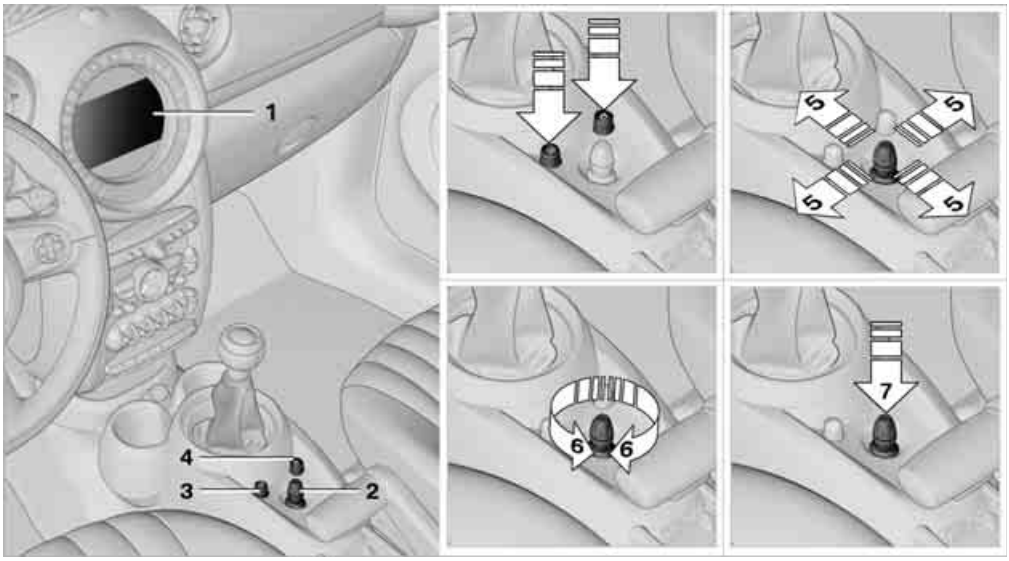
13 Accessing the main menu on the Control Display 17

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

ON-BOARD COMPUTER

The on-board computer integrates the functions of a large number of switches. This allows these functions to be operated from a single central position. The following section provides an introduction to basic menu navigation. The control of the individual functions is described in connection with the relevant equipment.

CONTROLS



1 Control Display

2 MINI joystick
The MINI joystick can be used to select menu items and to adjust settings:

- ▷ Move in four directions, arrows **5**
- ▷ Turn, arrow **6**
- ▷ Push, arrow **7**

3 Accessing the main menu 17

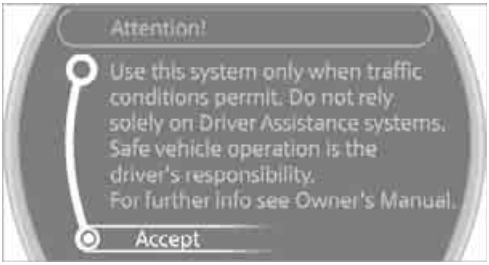
4 Changing to another menu 17

Make entries only when traffic and road conditions permit; otherwise, you may endanger vehicle occupants and other road users by being distracted.◀

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

OPERATING PRINCIPLE

As of radio readiness, the following message appears on the Control Display:

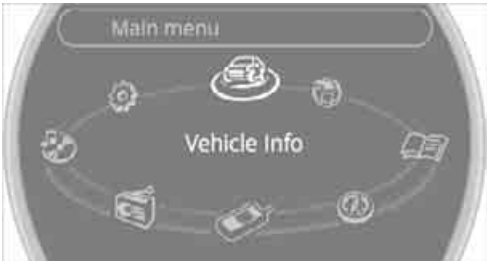


To hide the message:
Press the MINI joystick.
The main menu is displayed.

The message is automatically hidden after approx. 10 seconds.

Open the main menu

Press the button.



All functions of the on-board computer can be accessed via the main menu.

Selecting a menu item

Menu items displayed in white are available for selection.

1. Turn the MINI joystick until the desired menu item is highlighted.

2. Press the MINI joystick.

A new menu is displayed or the function is executed.

Menu items in the Owner's Manual

In the Owner's Manual, the menu items that should be selected are depicted in quotation marks, e.g. "Settings".

Changing between panels

After selecting a menu item, e.g. "Radio", a new menu is displayed on a panel. The panels can overlap.

Move the MINI joystick to the left or right to switch between the panels.

Arrows pointing left or right indicate that additional panels can be accessed.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

Open the Options menu

Move the MINI joystick to the right repeatedly until the "Options" menu is displayed.

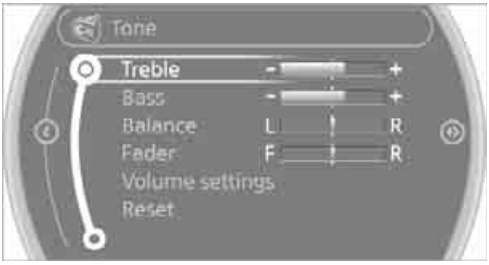
The following is displayed in the "Options" menu:

▷ Screen settings.

▷ Control options for the selected menu.

Adjusting settings

1. Select a field.
2. Turn the MINI joystick until the desired setting is displayed.



3. Press the MINI joystick to confirm the setting.

Activating/deactivating functions

Some menu items are preceded by a check box. It indicates whether the function is activated or deactivated.
Selecting the menu item activates or deactivates the function.

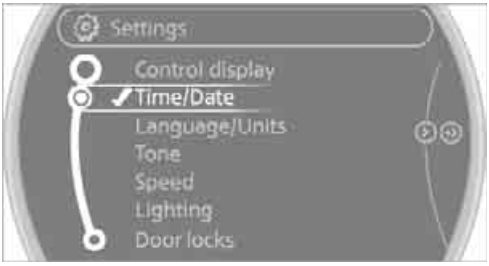
☑ Function is activated.

☐ Function is deactivated.

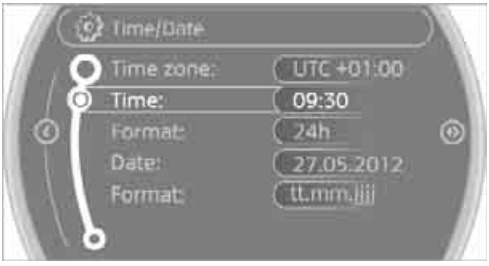
Example: setting the clock

1. Press the button.
   The main menu is displayed.
2. Turn the MINI joystick until "Settings" is selected, and press the MINI joystick.

3. Turn the MINI joystick until "Time/Date" is selected, and press the MINI joystick.



4. Turn the MINI joystick until "Time:" is selected, and press the MINI joystick.



5. Turn the MINI joystick to set the hours and press the MINI joystick.
6. Turn the MINI joystick to set the minutes and press the MINI joystick.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

STATUS INFORMATION

1 Time

2 Telephone status

- ▷ Incoming, outgoing or missed call
- ▷ ▲ Roaming* active
- ▷ ✉ Text message* received

3 ▂▃▄▅ Reception strength of the wireless network, depends on the mobile phone

4 Display for:

- ▷ Entertainment:
  Radio, CD, external devices
- ▷ Telephone*:
  Name of the mobile phone paired with the vehicle

5 🔇 Sound output is switched off or display for traffic bulletins*:

- ▷ "TI":
  Traffic bulletins are switched on.
- ▷ No display:
  Traffic bulletins are switched off.

Other displays:
Status information is temporarily hidden during Check Control message displays or entries via the voice activation system*.

SWITCHING CONTROL DISPLAY OFF/ON

1. Move the MINI joystick to the right repeatedly until the "Options" menu is displayed.
2. "Switch off control display"

To switch on, press the MINI joystick.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

LETTERS AND NUMBERS

ENTERING LETTERS AND NUMBERS

1. Turn the MINI joystick: select the letters or numbers.
2. Select additional letters or numbers if needed.
3. "OK": confirm entry.

Symbol	Function
⇤	Press the MINI joystick: delete one letter or number
⇤	Press and hold the MINI joystick: delete all letters or numbers
␣	Enter a blank space

Switching between letters and numbers

Depending on the menu, you can switch between entering letters and numbers:

Symbol	Function
ABC	Entering letters
1@+	Entering numbers

Switching between uppercase and lowercase letters

Depending on the menu, you can switch between entering uppercase letters and lowercase letters:

Symbol	Function
▲ abc	Move the MINI joystick forward: to switch from uppercase letters to lowercase letters
▲ ABC	Move the MINI joystick forward: to switch from lowercase letters to uppercase letters

Wordmatch concept during navigation

Entry of names and addresses: the selection is narrowed down every time a letter is entered and letters may be added automatically.

Destination search: the entries are continuously compared to the data stored in the vehicle.

▷ The only letters offered for entering addresses are those for which data are available.

▷ Town/city names can be entered with the spelling used in any of the languages available on the Control Display.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

VOICE ACTIVATION SYSTEM*

THE CONCEPT

The voice activation system allows you to control operation of various vehicle systems without removing your hands from the steering wheel.

Most menu items on the Control Display can be voiced as commands. It is not necessary to use the MINI joystick.

The voice activation system transforms oral commands into control signals for the selected systems and provides support in the form of instructions or questions.

Prerequisite

Via the on-board computer, select the language in which the voice activation system is operating, so that the spoken commands can be identified. Setting the on-board computer language, page 65.

Symbols in the Owner's Manual

›...‹ Say the specified commands word for word.
››...‹‹ Indicates responses of the voice activation system.

SAYING COMMANDS

Activating voice activation system

1. Press the button on the steering wheel.

This symbol on the Control Display and an acoustic signal indicate that the voice activation system is ready to receive spoken commands.

2. Say the command.
   The command appears on the Control Display.

This symbol is displayed on the Control Display when you can enter additional commands. If no further commands are possible, continue by operating the item of equipment via the on-board computer.

Terminating or canceling voice activation system

Press the button on the steering wheel
or

›Cancel‹

Commands

Most menu items on the Control Display can be voiced as commands.

The commands that are possible depend upon which menu is currently shown on the Control Display.

There are short commands for functions in the main menu.

Some list items, for example telephone book listings*, can also be selected using the voice activation system. Particularly say the list items as they are displayed in the respective list.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

Having the possible commands read aloud

Having the possible commands read aloud:

›Voice commands‹

For example if you have selected "CD" the system will read aloud the possible commands for operating the CD player.

Help for the voice activation system

Calling up Help:

›Help‹

Additional commands* for Help:

- ›Help with examples‹: information about the current operating options and the most important commands for them are announced.
- ›Help with voice activation‹: information regarding the principles behind the voice activation system is announced.

Using alternative commands

There are often a number of commands to run a function, e.g.:

›Radio‹ or ›Radio on‹

Calling up functions immediately via short commands

Short commands enable you to perform certain functions immediately, irrespective of which menu item is selected, page 227.

Open the main menu

›Main menu‹

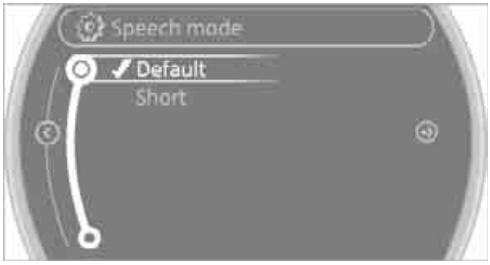
Example: selecting the track of a CD

1. Switch on Entertainment sound output if necessary.
2. Press the button on the steering wheel.
3. Select the music track, e.g.:
   ›C D track …‹
   The system replies:
   ››Track …‹‹

Setting the voice dialog

You can set whether the voice activation system uses the standard dialog or the short version. With the short version of the spoken dialog, the requests and responses of the voice activation system are shortened.

1. "Settings"
2. "Language/Units"
3. "Speech mode:"



4. Select a setting:
   - "Default"
   - "Short"

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

NOTES

For voice commands, bear in mind the following:

- Do not use the voice activation system to initiate an emergency call. In stressful situations, the voice and vocal pitch can change. This can unnecessarily delay the establishment of a telephone connection.
- Pronounce the commands and digits smoothly and at normal volume, avoiding excessive emphases and pauses. The same applies to spelling when entering a destination for navigation.
- Always speak the commands in the language of the voice activation system.
- When selecting a radio station, use the standard pronunciation of the station name.
- Keep the doors, windows and glass roof* closed to prevent interference from outside noise.
- Avoid ambient noise in the vehicle while speaking.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

HANDLE ME.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

AT A GLANCE

CONTROLS

DRIVING TIPS

NAVIGATION

ENTERTAINMENT

COMMUNICATIONS

MOBILITY

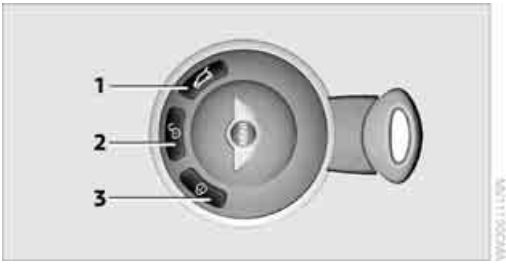
REFERENCE

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

OPENING AND CLOSING

KEYS/REMOTE CONTROLS

Buttons for the remote control



1 Opening the liftgate
2 Unlocking
3 Locking

General information

Each remote control contains a rechargeable battery that is recharged when it is in the ignition lock while the car is being driven. You should therefore use each remote control at least twice a year to maintain the charge status. In vehicles equipped with Comfort Access*, the remote control contains a replaceable battery, page 34.

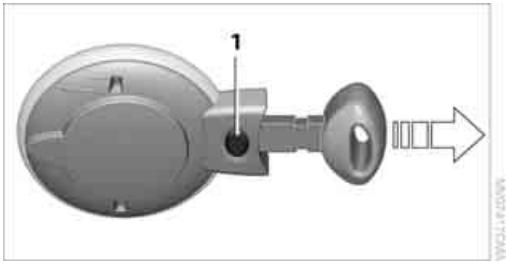
If more than one remote control unit is used, the settings called up and implemented depend on which remote control is recognized when the car is unlocked, refer to Personal Profile, page 26.

In addition, information about service requirements is stored in the remote control, refer to Service data in the remote control, page 202.

New remote controls

Your MINI dealer can supply new remote controls as additional units or as replacements in the event of loss.

Integrated key



Press button **1** to release the key.

The integrated key fits the following locks:

▷ Driver's door, page 29.

PERSONAL PROFILE

The concept

The functions of your MINI can be set individually. By means of Personal Profiles, most of these settings are stored for the remote control currently in use. When you unlock the car, the remote control is recognized and the settings stored for it are called up and implemented.

This means that your settings will be activated for you, even if in the meantime your car was used by someone else with another remote control and the corresponding settings.

At most three remote controls can be set for three different people. A prerequisite is that each person uses a separate remote control.

Personal Profile settings

For more information on specific settings, refer to the specified pages.

▷ Response of the central locking system when the car is being unlocked 27

▷ Automatic locking of the vehicle 30

▷ Triple turn signal activation 50

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

- Settings for the displays on the on-board computer, in the speedometer and in the tachometer:
  - 12 h/24 h mode of the clock 61
  - Date format 62
  - Brightness of the Control Display 65
  - Language on the Control Display 65
  - Units of measure for fuel consumption, distance covered/remaining distances and temperature 58
- Show visual warning for Park Distance Control PDC* 66
- Light settings:
  - Pathway lighting 79
  - Daytime running lights 80
- Automatic climate control*: activating/deactivating the AUTO program, setting the temperature, air volume and air distribution 85
- Entertainment:
  - Tone control 131
  - Adjusting volume levels 130

CENTRAL LOCKING SYSTEM

The concept

The central locking system is ready for operation whenever the driver's door is closed.

The system simultaneously engages and releases the locks on the following:

- Doors
- Liftgate
- Fuel filler flap

Operating from outside

- Via the remote control
- Via the door lock*
- In cars with Comfort Access*, via the door handles on the driver's and passenger's sides

The remote control can also be used to switch on/off the welcome lamps and interior lamps. The alarm system* is also activated or deactivated, page 31.

Operating from inside

Button for central locking system, page 30.

In the event of a sufficiently severe accident, the central locking system unlocks automatically. In addition, the hazard warning flashers and interior lamps come on.

OPENING AND CLOSING: FROM OUTSIDE

Persons or animals in a parked vehicle could lock the doors from the inside. Take the key with you when you leave the vehicle so that the vehicle can be opened from the outside.◀

Using the remote control

Unlocking

Press the button.
The welcome lamps and interior lamps come on.

Unlocking mode

You can also set which parts of the car are unlocked. The setting is stored for the remote control in use.

1. "Settings"

2. "Door locks"

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

3. "Unlock button"

4. Select a menu item:
   - ▷ All doors
     Press the button once to unlock the entire vehicle.
   - ▷ "Driver's door only"
     Press the button once to unlock only the driver's door and the fuel filler flap*.
     Press the button twice to unlock the entire vehicle.

Convenient opening

Hold the button down.
The power windows are opened and the glass roof* is tilted.

▷ Convenient closing is not possible by means of the remote control.◀

Locking

Press the button.

⚠ Do not lock the vehicle from the outside if there is any person inside, because the vehicle cannot be unlocked from inside without special knowledge.◀

Setting confirmation signals

To have the vehicle confirm when it has been locked or unlocked.

1. "Settings"
2. "Door locks"
3. "Flash when lock/unlock"

4. Press the MINI joystick.

Flashing when locking/unlocking the vehicle is switched on.

Switching on interior lamps

While the car is locked:
Press the button.
You can also use this function to locate your vehicle in parking garages, etc.

Unlocking liftgate

Press the button for approx. 1 second and then release it.

▷ When it is opened, the liftgate swings out and up toward the rear. Make sure that adequate clearance is available before opening. To prevent accidentally locking yourself out, do not place the key down in the cargo area. If the liftgate was locked before opening, it will be locked again after it is closed.
Before and after each trip, check that the liftgate has not been inadvertently unlocked.◀

Malfunctions

The remote control may malfunction due to local radio waves. If this occurs, unlock and lock the car at the door lock with the integrated key.

If the car can no longer be locked with a remote control, the battery in the remote control is discharged. Use this remote control during an extended drive; this will recharge the battery, page 26.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

For US owners only

The transmitter and receiver units comply with part 15 of the FCC/Federal Communications Commission regulations. Operation is governed by the following:

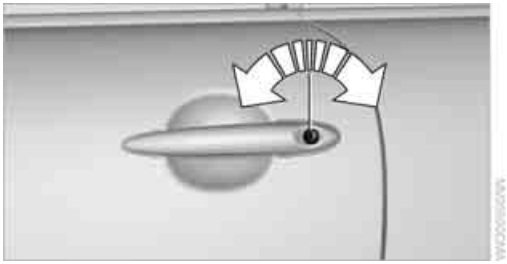
FCC ID:
LX8766S
LX8766E
LX8CAS

Compliance statement:
This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

- This device must not cause harmful interference, and
- this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Any unauthorized modifications or changes to these devices could void the user's authority to operate this equipment.◀

Using the door lock



You can set which parts of the car are unlocked, page 27.

Do not lock the vehicle from the outside if there is any person inside, because the vehicle cannot be unlocked from inside without special knowledge.◀

When there is no alarm system* or Comfort Access*, only the driver's door is locked with the door lock.◀

To lock all doors, the fuel filler flap, and the liftgate together:

- With the doors closed, press the interior central locking button, page 30 to lock the vehicle.
- Unlocking and opening the driver or passenger door, page 30.

Locking the vehicle.

- Lock the driver's door with the integrated key via the door lock, or
- press the safety lock button on the passenger's door and close the door from the outside.

Convenient operation

With an alarm system* or Comfort Access*, the windows and glass roof* can be operated via the door lock.

Opening/closing

Hold the key in the position for unlocking or locking.

Watch during the closing process to be sure that no one is injured. Releasing the key stops the operation.◀

Manual operation

In the event of an electrical malfunction, the driver's door can be unlocked or locked by turning the integrated key in the door lock to the end positions.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

OPENING AND CLOSING: FROM INSIDE

The switch locks or unlocks the doors and liftgate when the doors are closed, but the anti-theft system is not activated. The fuel filler flap remains unlocked*.

Unlocking and opening

- ▷ Either unlock the doors together using the switch for the central locking system and then pull the door handle above the armrest or
- ▷ pull on the door handle of either door twice: the first time unlocks the door, the second time opens it.

Locking

- ▷ Press the switch or
- ▷ press down the safety lock button of a door. To prevent you from being locked out, the open driver's door cannot be locked using the lock button.

⚠ Persons or animals in a parked vehicle could lock the doors from the inside. Take the key with you when you leave the vehicle so that the vehicle can be opened from the outside.◀

Automatic locking*

You can also set the situations in which the car locks. The setting is stored for the remote control in use.

1. "Settings"
2. "Door locks"
3. Select a menu item:
   - ▷ Lock if no door is opened
     The central locking system automatically locks the vehicle after a short time if no door has been opened.
   - ▷ "Lock after start. to drive"
     The central locking system locks the vehicle as soon as you begin to drive.

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

LIFTGATE

▷ To avoid damage, make sure there is sufficient clearance before opening the liftgate.◀

Opening

▷ In some market-specific versions, the liftgate cannot be unlocked using the remote control unless the vehicle is unlocked first.
Only drive with the liftgate fully closed; otherwise, the tail lamps will be obscured and driving safety will be compromised.◀

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

Press the top side of the MINI emblem, arrow, or

Press the button on the remote control for approx. 1 second and then release it. The liftgate is unlocked.

Closing

Make sure that the closing path of the liftgate is clear; otherwise, injuries may occur.◀

The handle recesses on the interior trim panel of the liftgate make it easier to pull it down.

ALARM SYSTEM*

The concept

The alarm system, when activated, reacts if:

- ▷ A door, the engine compartment lid or the liftgate is opened
- ▷ There is movement inside the car
- ▷ The car's inclination changes, for instance if an attempt is made to jack it up and steal the wheels or to raise it prior to towing away
- ▷ There is an interruption in the power supply from the battery

The alarm system briefly indicates unauthorized entry or tampering by means of:

- ▷ An acoustic alarm
- ▷ Switching on the hazard warning flashers

Arming and disarming

Whenever the car is locked or unlocked, the alarm system is armed or disarmed.

Even when the alarm system is armed, you can open the liftgate by means of the button on the remote control.
When you subsequently close the liftgate it is again locked and monitored.

In certain market-specific versions, unlocking via the door lock triggers the alarm.◀

Panic mode*

You can activate the alarm system if you find yourself in a dangerous situation.

Press the button for at least two seconds.

Switching off the alarm:
Press any button.

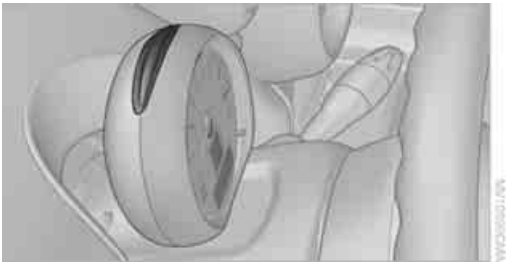
Switching off an alarm

- ▷ Unlock the car with the remote control.
- ▷ Insert the key fully into the ignition lock.
- ▷ In cars with Comfort Access*, press the button on the door lock.

Display on the revolution counter

When the system is armed, all LEDs pulse. After approx. 16 minutes one LED flashes.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG



- ▷ LEDs pulse or LED flashes: system is armed.
- ▷ One LED flashes at short intervals:
  A door, the hood or the liftgate is not properly closed. Even if these are not closed fully, the remaining items are deadlocked and the LEDs pulse after approx. 10 seconds for approx. 16 minutes. Afterwards, one LED flashes.
  The interior movement detector is not activated.
- ▷ LEDs go out after the vehicle is unlocked:
  No attempt was made to tamper with the car.
- ▷ LEDs flash after unlocking until the key is inserted in the ignition, but for no longer than approx. 5 minutes: an attempt was made to tamper with the car.

Tilt alarm sensor

The vehicle's inclination is monitored. The alarm is triggered, for instance, if an attempt is made to steal the car's wheels or tow it away.

Interior movement detector

Before the interior movement detector can operate correctly, the windows and glass roof must be closed.

Avoiding false alarms

The tilt alarm sensor and the interior movement detector can be switched off together.

This prevents false alarms, e.g. in the following situations:

- ▷ In duplex garages
- ▷ When being transported on car-carrying trains, ferries or trailers
- ▷ If pets are to remain inside the car

Switching off the tilt alarm sensor and interior movement detector

- ▷ Press the button on the remote control twice in succession.
- ▷ Lock the vehicle twice with the integrated key.

LEDs flash in short succession for approx. 2 seconds.
The tilt alarm sensor and the interior movement detector are switched off until the car is next unlocked and locked.

COMFORT ACCESS*

Comfort Access enables you to enter your vehicle without having to hold the remote control in your hand. All you need to do is wear the remote control close to your body, e.g. in your jacket pocket. The vehicle automatically detects the remote control within the immediate vicinity or in the passenger compartment.

Functional requirements

- ▷ The vehicle or the liftgate can only be locked when the vehicle detects that the remote control currently in use is outside of the vehicle.
- ▷ The vehicle cannot be locked or unlocked again until after approx. 2 seconds.
- ▷ The engine can only be started when the vehicle detects that the remote control is inside the vehicle.
- ▷ The doors and liftgate must be closed to be able to operate the windows and glass sunroof*.

Comfort Access supports the following functions:

- ▷ Unlocking/locking the vehicle
- ▷ Convenient closing

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

▷ Unlocking the liftgate separately

▷ Starting the engine

Comparison to standard remote controls

Essentially, it makes no difference whether you control the above-mentioned functions using Comfort Access or by pressing the buttons on the remote control for Comfort Access.

Instructions on opening and closing are found starting on page 26.

Special features regarding the use of Comfort Access are described below.

If you notice a brief delay while opening or closing the windows or glass roof, the system is checking whether a remote control is inside the vehicle. Repeat the opening or closing procedure, if necessary.◀

Unlocking

Press button **1**.
Depending on the setting, refer to Unlocking mode on page 27, only the driver's door or the entire vehicle is unlocked.

Press the button again to lock the vehicle again.◀

Convenient opening with the remote control, refer to page 28.

Locking

Press button **1**.

For Convenient closing, press and hold button **1**.

In addition, the windows and the glass sunroof* are closed.

Unlocking the liftgate separately

Press the top side of the MINI emblem.

If the vehicle detects that a remote control has been accidentally left inside the locked vehicle's cargo area after the liftgate is closed, the liftgate will reopen slightly. The hazard warning flashers flash and an acoustic signal* sounds.◀

Windows and glass roof, electric*

If the engine is switched off, you can still operate the windows and glass sunroof so long as a door or the liftgate has not been opened.

If the doors and liftgate are closed again and the remote control is located inside the vehicle, the windows and the glass sunroof can be operated again.

Insert the remote control into the ignition lock to be able to operate the windows or glass sunroof when the engine is switched off and the doors are open.

Switching on radio readiness

Switch on radio readiness by briefly pressing the Start/Stop button, page 46.

Do not depress the brake or the clutch; otherwise, the engine will start.◀

Starting the engine

The engine can be started or the ignition can be switched on when a remote control is inside the vehicle. It is not necessary to insert a remote control into the ignition lock, page 46.

Switching off the engine in cars with automatic transmission

The engine can only be switched off when the selector lever is in position P, page 47.
To switch the engine off when the selector lever is in position N, the remote control must be in the ignition lock.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

Before driving a vehicle with automatic transmission into a car wash

1. Insert remote control into ignition lock.
2. Depress the brake.
3. Move the selector lever to position N.
4. Switch off the engine.

The vehicle can roll.

Malfunction

Comfort Access may malfunction due to local radio waves.

If this happens, open or close the vehicle via the buttons on the remote control or using the integrated key.
Insert the remote control into the ignition lock and start the engine.

Warning lamps

The warning lamp lights up when an attempt is made to start the engine: the engine cannot be started. The remote control is not inside the vehicle or is malfunctioning. Take the remote control with you inside the vehicle or have it checked. If necessary, insert another remote control into the ignition lock.

The warning lamp lights up when the engine is running: the remote control is no longer inside the vehicle. After the engine is switched off, the engine can only be restarted within approx. 10 seconds.

The indicator lamp lights up and a message appears on the Control Display: replace the battery in the remote control.

Replacing the battery

The remote control for Comfort Access contains a battery that will need to be replaced from time to time.

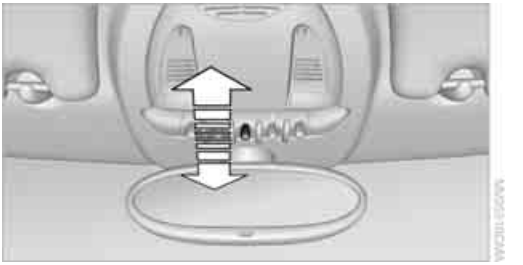
1. Remove the cover.

2. Insert the new battery with the plus side facing up.
3. Press the cover on to close.

Take the old battery to a recycling center or to your MINI dealer.◀

GLASS ROOF, ELECTRIC*

To prevent injuries, exercise care when closing the glass roof and keep it in your field of vision until it is shut.
Take the key with you when you leave the car; otherwise, children could operate the roof and possibly injure themselves.◀



Tilting

▷ Press the switch backward to the resistance point and hold it there.
Both glass roofs are tilted.
Releasing the switch stops the movement.

▷ With the ignition switched on, press the switch backward beyond the resistance point.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

Both closed roofs are tilted fully.
Pressing again stops the movement.

Opening, closing

With the ignition switched on and the glass sunroof tilted, press the switch backward and hold it there.
The front glass roof opens.
The rear glass roof is closed.
Releasing the switch stops the movement.

The glass sunroof can be closed in the same way by pressing the switch forward.

The front glass roof remains in a tilted position. The rear glass roof is tilted. Pressing on the switch again closes both roofs completely.

Convenient operation via door lock or Comfort Access, refer to page 28, 29, 33.

Roller sun blind

The roller sun blind can be opened and closed independently of the glass roof.

Following interruptions in electrical power supply

After a power failure, there is a possibility that the glass roof can only be tilted. In this case, have the system initialized. The manufacturer of your MINI recommends that you have this work done by your MINI dealer.

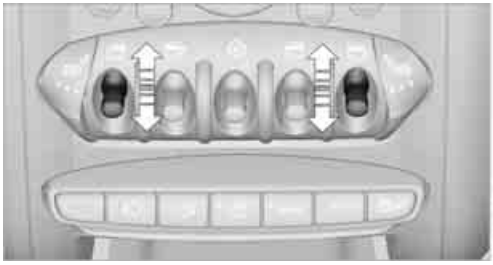
WINDOWS

To prevent injuries, exercise care when closing the windows.
Take the remote control with you when you leave the car; otherwise, children could operate the electric windows and possibly injure themselves.◀

If, after a window is opened and closed several times in close succession, the window can only be closed and not opened, the system is overheated. Let the system cool for several minutes with the ignition switched on or the engine running.◀

Opening, closing

Front window

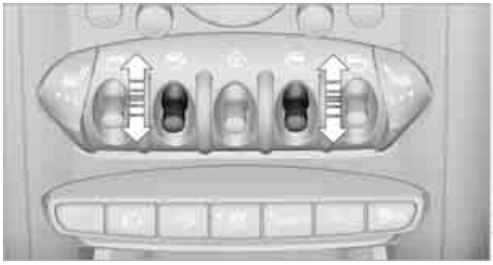


▷ Press the switch downward.
The window opens until you release the switch.

▷ Push the switch downward.
As of radio readiness, the windows will open automatically. Push the switch again to stop the opening movement.

The window can be closed in the same way by pressing the switch up.

Rear window



▷ Press the switch downward.
The window opens until you release the switch.

▷ Push the switch downward.
As of radio readiness, the windows will open automatically. Push the switch again to stop the opening movement.

The window can be closed in the same way by pressing the switch up.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

After switching off the ignition

When the ignition is switched off, the windows can still be operated for approx. 1 minute as long as no door is opened.

Take the key with you when you leave the car; otherwise, children could operate the electric windows and possibly injure themselves.◀

Pinch protection system

If the closing force rises beyond a predefined threshold during closing, the system will stop moving the window prior to lowering it again slightly.

Even though there is the pinch protection system, always ensure that the window's travel path is clear; otherwise, the safety system might fail to detect certain kinds of obstructions, such as thin objects, and the window would continue closing.

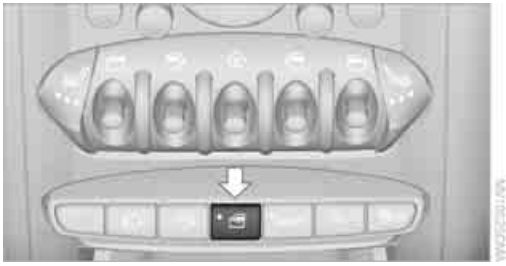
Do not install any accessories that might interfere with window movement. Otherwise, the pinch protection system could be impaired.◀

Closing without pinch protection

If there is an external danger, or if ice on the windows, etc., prevents you from closing the windows normally, the window can be closed manually.

1. Press the switch upward and hold it there. Pinch protection is limited and the window reopens slightly if the closing force exceeds a certain value.
2. Press the switch upward again within approx. 4 seconds and hold it there. The window closes without pinch protection.

Safety switch



With the safety switch, you can prevent the rear windows from being opened or closed via the switches in the rear passenger area, by children, for example.

Press the button, arrow.
The LED lights up when this safety feature is activated.

Always press the safety switch when children ride in the rear, otherwise uncontrolled closing of the windows could lead to injuries.◀

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

ADJUSTMENTS

SITTING SAFELY

The ideal sitting position can make a vital contribution to relaxed, fatigue-free driving. In conjunction with the safety belts, the head restraints and the airbags, the seated position has a major influence on your safety in the event of an accident. To ensure that the safety systems operate with optimal efficiency, we strongly urge you to observe the instructions contained in the following section.

For additional information on transporting children safely, refer to page 43.

Airbags

Always maintain an adequate distance between yourself and the airbags. Always grip the steering wheel on the rim, with your hands in the 3 o'clock and 9 o'clock positions, to minimize the risk of injury to the hands or arms in the event of the airbag being triggered off.
No one and nothing should come between the airbags and the seat occupant.
Do not use the cover of the front airbag on the front passenger side as a storage area. Ensure that the front passenger is correctly seated, e.g. that no feet or legs are propped against the dashboard. Otherwise, leg injury could result if the front airbag suddenly deployed.
Make sure that passengers keep their heads away from the side airbag and do not lean against the cover of the head airbag, otherwise injuries can occur when the airbags are triggered.◀

Even if you follow all the instructions, injuries resulting from contact with airbags cannot be fully excluded, depending on the circumstances. The ignition and inflation noise may provoke a mild hearing loss in extremely sensitive individuals. This effect is usually only temporary.

For airbag locations and additional information on airbags, refer to page 76.

Head restraint

A correctly adjusted head restraint reduces the risk of neck injury in the event of an accident.

Adjust the head restraint in such a way that its center is at approx. ear level. Otherwise, there is an increased risk of injury in the event of an accident.◀

Head restraints, refer to page 39.

Safety belt

Before every drive, make sure that all occupants wear their safety belts. Airbags complement the safety belt as an additional safety device, but they do not represent a substitute.

Number of safety belts

Never allow more than one person to wear a single safety belt. Never allow infants or small children to ride in a passenger's lap.
Make sure that the belt in the lap area sits low across the hips and does not press against the abdomen. The safety belt must not rest against the throat, run across sharp edges, pass over hard or fragile objects or be pinched. Fasten the safety belt so that it is pulled taut across the lap and shoulder, fitting the body snugly without any twists. Otherwise, the belt could slide over the hips in the event of a frontal collision and injure the abdomen. Avoid wearing bulky clothing and regularly pull the belt in the upper-body area taut; otherwise, its restraining effect could be impaired.◀

Safety belts, refer to page 40.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

SEATS

Note before adjusting

Never attempt to adjust your seat while the vehicle is moving. The seat could respond with unexpected movement, and the ensuing loss of vehicle control could lead to an accident.
On the front passenger seat as well, do not incline the backrest too far to the rear while the vehicle is being driven; otherwise, there is a danger in the event of an accident of sliding under the safety belt, eliminating the protection normally provided by the belt.◀

Comply with the instructions on head restraint height on page 39 and on damaged safety belts on page 41.

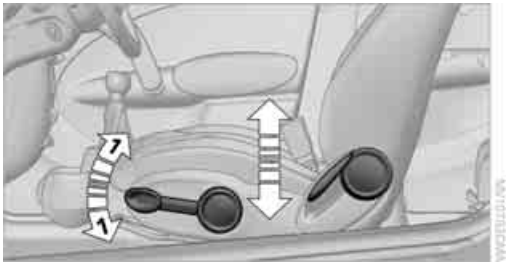
Seat adjustment, front

Observe the instructions on page 38 to ensure the best possible personal protection.◀

Longitudinal direction

Pull lever, arrow **1**, and move the seat into the desired position, arrows **2**.
After releasing the lever, slightly move the seat forwards or backwards so that it properly engages.

Height



Pull up or push down the lever repeatedly, arrows **1**, until the desired height is reached.

Backrest

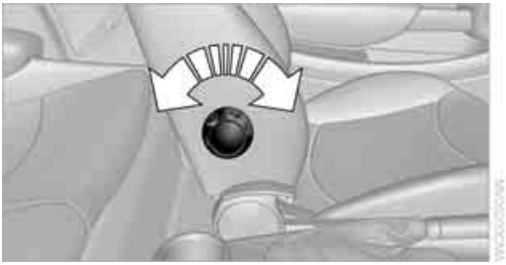
Pull lever, arrow **1**, and apply weight to or remove weight from the backrest as needed.

Lumbar support*

You can also adjust the contour of the backrest to obtain additional support in the lumbar region.

The upper hips and spinal column receive supplementary support to help you maintain a relaxed, upright sitting position.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

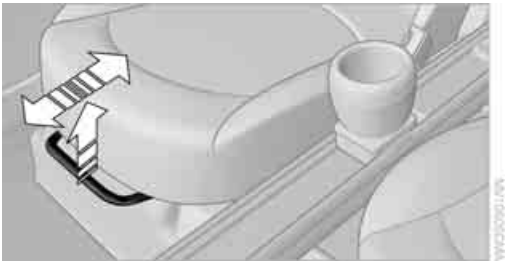


Turn the wheel to increase or decrease the curvature.

Seat adjustment, rear

Do not adjust rear seats while the vehicle is moving; otherwise, passengers could be injured.
Make sure that the locking devices of the rear seats engage properly. Otherwise the restraining effect of the safety belts during an accident could be reduced.◀

Longitudinal adjustment



1. Pull the lever and slide the seat into the desired position.
2. Release the lever and move the seat slightly forward or back so that it engages properly.

Backrest

Adjusting backrest angle, refer to page 98.

HEAD RESTRAINTS

Correctly adjusted head restraint

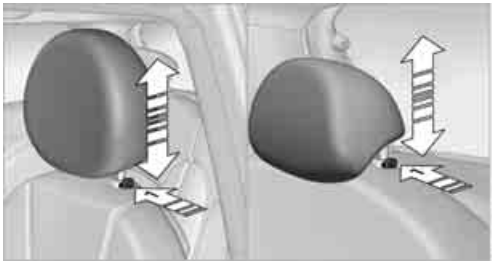
A correctly adjusted head restraint reduces the risk of neck injury in the event of an accident.

Correctly adjust the head restraints of all occupied seats; otherwise, there is an increased risk of injury in an accident.◀

Height

Adjust the head restraint so that its center is approximately at ear level.

Height adjustment



To raise: pull up.

To lower: press the button, arrow **1**, and slide the head restraint down.

Removing

Only remove a head restraint if no one will be sitting on the seat in question.

Reinstall the head restraint before transporting passengers, as otherwise the head restraint cannot provide its protective function.◀

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

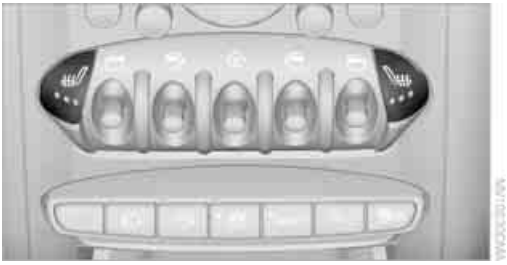
Front

1. Pull up as far as it will go.
2. Fold the backrest back slightly.
3. Press button **1** and pull the head restraint out as far as it will go.
4. Also press button **2** with a suitable tool and completely remove the head restraint.
5. Fold back the backrest.

Rear

1. Pull up as far as it will go.
2. Fold the backrest forward slightly.
3. Press button **1** and pull the head restraint out completely.
4. Also press button **2** with a suitable tool and completely remove the head restraint.
5. Fold rear seat backrest back into position.

SEAT HEATING*



Switching on

Press once for each temperature level.
Three LEDs indicate the highest temperature.

If you continue driving within the next 15 minutes, the seat heating is automatically activated at the previously set temperature.

The temperature is lowered or the heating is switched off entirely to reduce the drain on the battery.
The LEDs stay lit.

Switching off

Press button longer.

SAFETY BELTS

⚠ Observe the instructions on page 38 to ensure the best possible personal protection.◀

Before every drive, make sure that all occupants wear their safety belts. Airbags complement the safety belt as an additional safety device, but they do not represent a substitute.

Front and rear seats

Closing

Make sure you hear the lock engage in the belt buckle.

The upper belt anchor is suitable for adults of any stature as long as the seat is adjusted properly, page 38.

Opening

1. Grasp the belt firmly.
2. Press the red button in the buckle.
3. Guide the belt into its reel.

Height adjustment for rear seat belt tongues

When the outer rear seats are unoccupied, the seat belt tongues can be slid back to the cargo area trim panel with a clasp to prevent noise.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

Safety belt reminder

Front seats

The indicator lamps come on and an acoustic signal sounds.A message also appears on the Control Display.Check whether the safety belt has been fastened correctly. The 'Fasten safety belts' reminder is issued when the driver's safety belt has not been fastened. The 'Fasten safety belts' reminder is also activated at road speeds above approx. 5 mph or 8 km/h if the front passenger's safety belt has not been fastened, if objects are placed on the front passenger seat, or if driver or front passenger unfasten their safety belts.

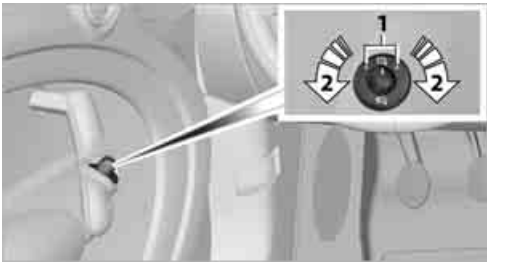
Damage to safety belts

If the safety belts are damaged or stressed in an accident: have the safety belt system and its seat-belt tensioners replaced and the belt anchors checked. Have this work carried out only by a MINI dealer or by a workshop that has specially trained personnel working in accordance with the specifications of the MINI manufacturer; otherwise, correct operation of these safety systems is not ensured.◀

MIRRORS

Exterior mirrors

The mirror on the passenger's side is more curved than the driver's mirror. The objects seen in the mirror are closer than they appear. Do not gauge your distance from traffic behind you on the basis of what you see in the mirror; otherwise, there is an increased risk of an accident.◀



1 Adjusting the left or right exterior mirror

2 Folding mirrors in and out*

Manual adjustment

The mirrors can also be adjusted manually: press the edge of the glass.

Folding mirrors in and out*

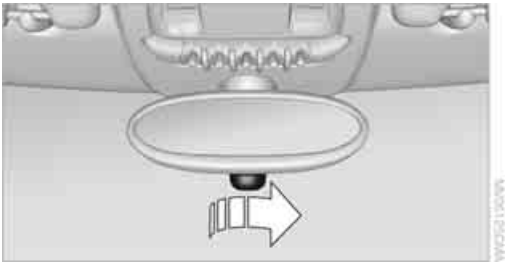
Turn the knob beyond the pressure point in direction **2**. The mirrors can be folded in at road speeds up to approx. 20 mph/30 km/h.

This can be beneficial in narrow streets, for example, or for moving mirrors that were folded in by hand back out into their correct positions.

Automatic heating*

At external temperatures below a certain limit, both exterior mirrors are automatically heated while the engine is running or the ignition switched on.

Interior rearview mirror

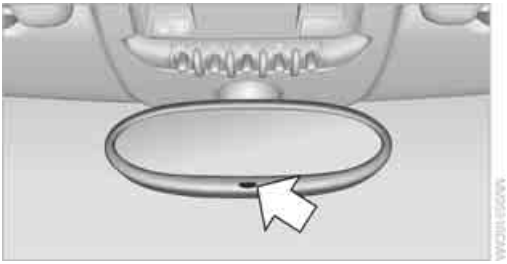


To reduce glare from vehicles behind you when you are driving at night:

Turn the knob.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

Interior and exterior mirrors, automatic dimming feature*



It is controlled by two photosensors:

- ▷ Inside the interior rearview mirror, arrow.
- ▷ On the back of the mirror.

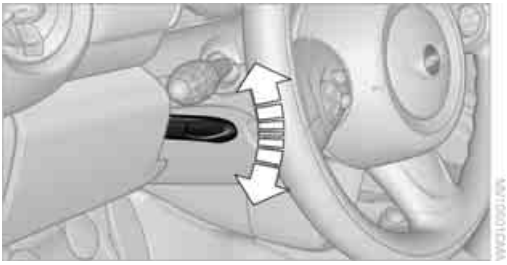
For proper function:

- ▷ Keep the photosensors clean.
- ▷ Do not cover the area between the interior rearview mirror and the windshield.
- ▷ Do not place stickers or decals on the windshield in front of the mirror.

STEERING WHEEL

Adjustments

Do not adjust the steering wheel position while the car is in motion; otherwise, there is a risk of accident due to an unexpected movement.◀



1. Fold the lever down.
2. Move the steering wheel to the preferred distance and angle to suit your seated position.
3. Swing the lever back up.

   Do not use force to swing the lever back up; otherwise, the mechanism will be damaged.◀

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

TRANSPORTING CHILDREN SAFELY

THE RIGHT PLACE FOR CHILDREN

Do not leave children unattended in the vehicle; otherwise, they could endanger themselves and/or other persons by opening the doors, for example.◀

Children should always sit in the rear

Accident research has shown that the safest place for children is on the rear seat.

Only transport children under the age of 13 or smaller than 5 ft/150 cm in the rear in a child restraint system suitable for their age, weight and size. Otherwise, there is an increased risk of injury in the event of an accident.◀

Children 13 years of age or older must be buckled in with a safety belt as soon as there no longer is any child restraint system that is appropriate for their age, size and weight.

Exception for front passenger seat

Front passenger airbags

Should it be necessary to use a child restraint system on the front passenger seat, the front and side airbags must be deactivated. Otherwise, there is an increased risk of injury to the child if the airbags deploy, even if the child is seated in a child restraint system.◀

For more information on automatic deactivation of the front passenger airbags, refer to page 76.

CHILD RESTRAINT SYSTEMS, INSTALLATION

Before installing a child restraint system on the rear seats, move the seat as far back as possible.

After the child restraint system has been installed on the respective rear seat, move the backrest forward so that the it rests lightly against the child restraint system, refer to Rear seat backrests on page 98.

Observe the child restraint system manufacturer's instructions when selecting, installing and using child restraint systems. Otherwise, the protective effect may be diminished.◀

On the front passenger seat

After installing a child restraint system on the front passenger seat, make sure that the front, side, and knee airbags for the front passenger are deactivated; otherwise, there is an increased risk of injury if the airbags deploy.◀

Seat position

Before installing a child restraint system, move the front passenger seat as far back and up* as possible to obtain the best possible position for the belt. Do not change the seat position after this.

Child seat security

All rear safety belts and the safety belt for the front passenger can be prevented from being pulled out in order to secure child restraint systems.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

To lock the safety belt

1. Secure the child restraint system with the belt.
2. Pull the belt strap all the way out.
3. Allow the belt strap to retract and pull it taut against the child restraint system.

The safety belt is locked.

To unlock the safety belt

1. Open the belt buckle
2. Remove the child restraint system.
3. Allow the safety belt strap to retract all the way.

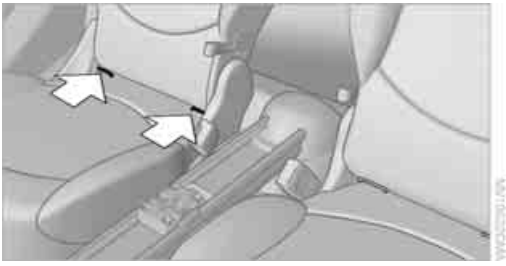
LATCH CHILD RESTRAINT FIXING SYSTEM

LATCH: Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children.

To install and use the LATCH child restraint system, follow the operating and safety instructions provided by the manufacturer of the system; otherwise, the protective function of the seat may be compromised.◀

Anchor points for LATCH anchors

Before installing the child seat, pull the belt out of the area for the child restraint fixing system.

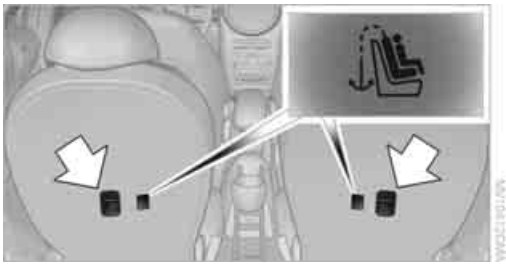


The mounts for the lower LATCH anchors are located at the points indicated by the arrows.

Make sure that both lower LATCH anchors are properly engaged and that the child restraint system rests firmly against the seat backrest; otherwise, the protective function of the seat may be compromised.◀

Child restraint system with tether strap

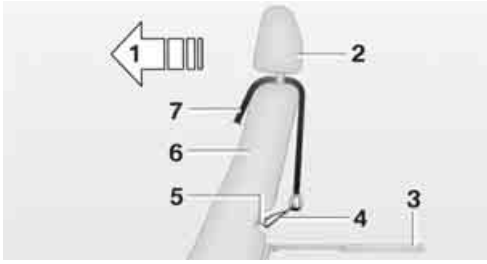
Use the tether strap anchors to secure child restraint systems only; otherwise, the anchors could be damaged.◀



There are two additional anchors for child restraint systems with tether straps, arrows.

Placement of the tether strap

Make sure the upper retaining strap does not run over sharp edges and is not twisted as it passes to the top anchor. Otherwise, the strap will not properly secure the child restraint system in the event of an accident.◀



1 Direction of travel
2 Head restraint
3 Rear cargo well
4 Tether strap hook
5 Anchor
6 Seat backrest
7 Tether strap of the child restraint system

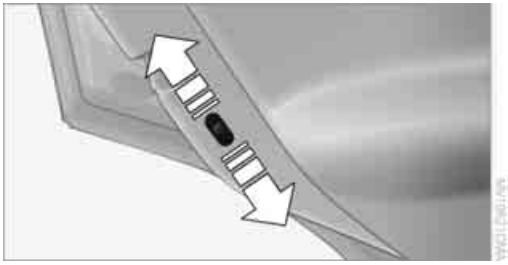
Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

Attaching upper retaining strap to the attachment point

1. Slide the head restraint upward.
2. Guide the tether strap between the head restraint holders.
3. Attach the tether strap to the anchor using the hook.
4. Push the head restraint into its lowermost position.
5. Pull the retaining strap tight.

SECURING DOORS AND WINDOWS

Rear doors



Slide down the safety lever on the rear doors.

The door can now be opened from the outside only.

Safety switch for power windows

The rear power windows are blocked and cannot be operated from the rear. Press safety switch, refer to page 36.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

DRIVING

IGNITION LOCK

Inserting the key into the ignition lock

Insert the key all the way into the ignition lock.

Radio readiness
Individual electrical consumers can operate.

Removing the key from the ignition lock

Press in the key briefly. It is ejected slightly.

At the same time:

▷ The ignition is switched off if it was on beforehand.

Automatic transmission

The key can only be removed if the selector lever is in position P: interlock.

START/STOP BUTTON

Press the Start/Stop button to switch radio readiness or the ignition on and off. Do not depress the brake or clutch while doing so.

If the Start/Stop button is pressed while the clutch is depressed in the manual transmission or the brake pedal is depressed in the automatic transmission, the engine starts.◀

Radio readiness

Individual electrical consumers can operate. The time and external temperature are displayed in the tachometer.

Radio readiness is switched off automatically:

▷ When the key is removed from the ignition lock

▷ When using Comfort Access* by pushing the button on the door handle or the button on the remote control, refer to Locking on page 33

▷ After a certain has elapsed

Ignition on

Most indicator and warning lamps in indicator area **1**, page 13, light up for varying lengths of time.

When the engine is off, switch off the ignition and any unnecessary electrical consumers in order to preserve the battery.◀

Radio readiness and ignition off

All indicator and warning lamps in the displays go out.

The ignition switches off automatically if the driver's door is opened. Pressing the Start/Stop button again switches the ignition back on.

The ignition is not switched off in situations such as the following:

▷ The clutch or brake is depressed

▷ The low beams are switched on

STARTING THE ENGINE

Do not allow the engine to run in enclosed areas; otherwise, inhalation of the noxious exhaust gases can lead to loss of consciousness and death. Exhaust gases contain carbon monoxide, an odorless and colorless, but highly toxic

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

gas. Never leave an unattended vehicle with the engine running; otherwise, such a vehicle represents a potential safety hazard.
Before leaving the car while the engine is running, place the transmission in neutral or move the selector lever to position P and forcefully apply the parking brake to prevent the car from moving.◀

Avoid frequent starting in quick succession or repeated start attempts in which the engine does not start. Otherwise, the fuel is not burned or inadequately burned and there is a danger of overheating and damaging the catalytic converter.◀

Do not let the engine warm up with the vehicle at a standstill. Move off immediately at a moderate engine speed.

When starting the engine, do not depress the accelerator pedal.

Manual transmission

Key in ignition lock or inside vehicle with Comfort Access, refer to page 32.

1. Depress the brake.
2. Depress the clutch.
3. Press the Start/Stop button.

Automatic transmission*

Key in ignition lock or inside vehicle with Comfort Access, refer to page 32.

1. Depress the brake.
2. Shift the selector lever into position P or N.
3. Press the Start/Stop button.

The starter operates automatically for a certain time, and stops automatically as soon as the engine has started.

SWITCHING OFF THE ENGINE

Always take the key with you when you leave the vehicle.
When parking, apply the parking brake forcefully; otherwise, the vehicle could begin to roll.◀

Manual transmission

1. With the car at a standstill, press the Start/Stop button.
2. Shift into first gear or reverse.
3. Forcefully apply the parking brake.

Automatic transmission*

1. With the car at a stop, move the selector lever to position P.
2. Press the Start/Stop button.
3. Forcefully apply the parking brake.

Before driving into a car wash

By following these steps, the vehicle is able to roll:

1. Place the remote control, even with Comfort Access, in the ignition lock.
2. Depress the brake.
3. Move the selector lever to position N.
4. Switch off the engine.

PARKING BRAKE

The parking brake is primarily intended to prevent the vehicle from rolling while parked; it brakes the rear wheels.

Applying

The lever locks in position automatically.

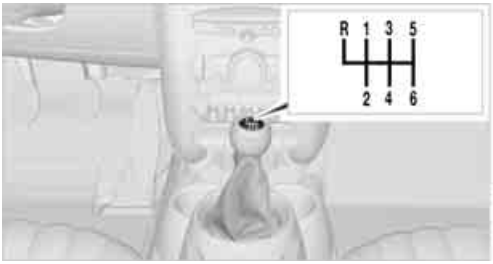
Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

Releasing

Pull upward slightly, press the button, arrow, and guide the lever down.

In exceptional cases, if the parking brake has to be used to slow or stop the car, do not pull the lever up too hard. In doing so, continuously press the button of the parking brake lever.
Otherwise, excessive force could lead to overbraking and loss of traction, i.e. fishtailing, at the rear axle.◀

MANUAL TRANSMISSION



When shifting into 5th or 6th gear, press the gearshift lever to the right. Otherwise, the engine could be damaged if you inadvertently shift into 3rd or 4th gear.◀

Reverse gear

Select this only when the vehicle is stationary. When the gearshift lever is pressed to the left, a slight resistance has to be overcome.

AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION* WITH STEPTRONIC

In addition to the fully automatic mode, you can shift gears manually using Steptronic, page 49.

Parking the vehicle

To prevent the vehicle from rolling, always select position P and apply the parking brake before leaving the vehicle with the engine running.◀

Removing the key

To remove the key from the ignition lock, first move the selector lever into position P and then switch off the engine: interlock. Remove the key from the ignition lock, refer to page 46.

Selector lever positions

P R N D M/S + –

Displays in the tachometer

P R N D DS M1 to M6

The selector lever position is displayed, or the current gear in the manual mode.

Changing selector lever positions

- ▷ The selector lever can only be moved out of position P when the ignition is switched on or the engine is running.
- ▷ Before moving the lever away from P or N with the vehicle stationary, first depress the brake; otherwise, the selector lever will refuse to move: shiftlock.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

To prevent the vehicle from creeping after you select a driving position, depress the brake until you are ready to start.◀

A lock prevents accidental shifting into selector lever positions R and P.

Overriding the selector lever lock

Press the button on the front of the selector lever, arrow.

P Park

Select this only when the vehicle is stationary. The transmission locks to prevent the drive wheels from turning.

R Reverse

Select this only when the vehicle is stationary.

N Neutral

Select this when you are in a car wash, for example. The vehicle can roll.

D Drive, automatic position

Position for normal vehicle operation. All forward gears are selected automatically.

Under normal operating conditions, the fuel consumption is lowest when driving in position D.

Kickdown

Kickdown enables you to achieve maximum performance.
Depress the accelerator pedal beyond the full-throttle resistance point.

Sports programming and manual mode M/S

Move the selector lever from position D to the left into the M/S shifting slot:
The Sport program is activated and DS is displayed. This position is recommended for a performance-oriented driving style.

To deactivate the Sport program or manual mode M/S, move the selector lever to the right into position D.

Shifting with the selector lever

Push the selector lever forward or pull it back to activate manual operation. Steptronic shifts the gear.

- ▷ Pull the selector lever in the + direction. Transmission shifts up.
- ▷ Push the selector lever in the – direction. Transmission shifts down.

The selected gear is displayed in the tachometer, e.g. M1.

To use the automatic mode again, move the selector lever to the right into position D.

Upshifts and downshifts are executed only when they will result in a plausible combination of engine and vehicle speed; thus, for example, a downshift that would cause the engine to over-rev will not be executed by the system. The selected gear is displayed briefly, followed by the current gear.

Shifting on the steering wheel*

With the selector lever in position D, automatic drive, you can shift gears using the shift paddles

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

on the steering wheel. The transmission automatically switches to manual mode.

If you do not shift gears with the shift paddles or accelerate for a certain amount of time, the transmission automatically returns to D, automatic drive.

▷ Pull one of the shift paddles.
Transmission shifts up.

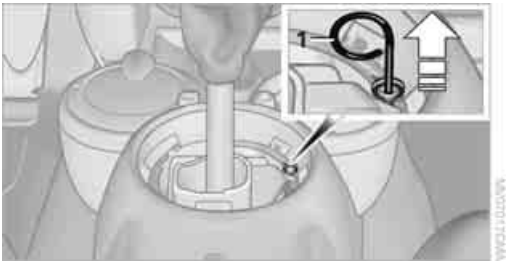
▷ Push one of the shift paddles.
Transmission shifts down.

M1 through M6 are displayed in the tachometer.

Manually releasing the selector lever lock

Should the selector lever refuse to move out of position P even though the ignition is switched on, the brake is depressed and the button on the selector lever is pressed, the selector lever lock can be overridden:

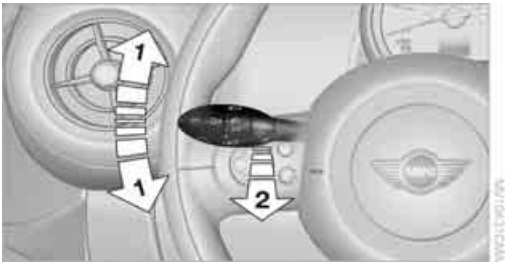
1. Unclip the sleeve of the selector lever.
2. Pull the sleeve up over the selector lever until the sleeve is inside out. Disconnect the cable connector if necessary.



3. Insert extractor hook **1** into the loop on the passenger's side.
4. Pull the loop up.
5. Move the selector lever into the desired position by pressing the button on the front of the selector lever.

▷ Before manually unlocking the selector lever lock, firmly set the parking brake to prevent the vehicle from rolling away.◀

TURN SIGNALS/ HEADLAMP FLASHER



1 Turn signal

2 Headlamp flasher

Using turn signals

Press the lever beyond the resistance point.

To turn off manually, press the lever to the resistance point.

▷ Unusually rapid flashing of the indicator lamp indicates that an indicator bulb has failed.◀

Indicating a turn briefly

Press the lever as far as the resistance point for as long as you wish to indicate a turn.

Triple turn signal activation

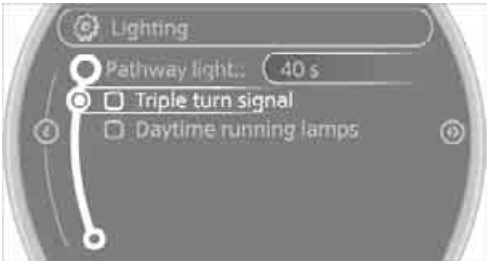
Press the lever as far as the resistance point.

You can set whether the turn signal flashes once or three times.

1. "Settings"
2. "Lighting"

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

3. "Triple turn signal"



The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

WIPER SYSTEM

1 Switching on wipers
2 Switching off wipers or brief wipe
3 Activating/deactivating intermittent wipe or rain sensor*
4 Cleaning windshield and headlamps*

Switching on wipers

Press the lever upward, arrow **1**.

The lever automatically returns to its initial position when released.

Normal wiper speed

Press once.
The system switches to intermittent operation when the vehicle is stationary.

Fast wiper speed

Press twice or press beyond the resistance point. The system switches to normal speed when the vehicle is stationary.

Intermittent wipe or rain sensor*

If the car is not equipped with a rain sensor, the intermittent-wipe time is preset.

If the car is equipped with a rain sensor, the time between wipes is controlled automatically and depends on the intensity of the rainfall. The rain sensor is mounted on the windshield, directly in front of the interior rearview mirror.

Activating intermittent wipe or rain sensor

Press button, arrow **3**.

This symbol is displayed in the tachometer.

Deactivate the rain sensor before entering an automatic car wash. Failure to do so could result in damage caused by undesired wiper activation.◀

Adjusting the sensitivity of the rain sensor

1. Switch on the ignition, refer to page 46.
2. Press the button on the turn signal indicator as often as necessary until "SET/INFO" is displayed.

3. Press and hold the button until the display changes.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

4. Press the button as often as necessary until the symbol and "SET" are displayed.

5. Press and hold the button until the display changes.

6. Press the button to select the desired sensitivity.
7. Wait, or press and hold the button until the display changes.
   The settings are stored.

Deactivating intermittent wipe or rain sensor

Press the button again, arrow **3**.

Brief wipe

Press the lever downward once, arrow **2**.

Cleaning windshield and headlamps*

Pull the lever, arrow **4**.

Washer fluid is sprayed onto the windshield and the wipers are operated briefly.

When the vehicle lighting system is switched on, the headlamps are cleaned at regular and appropriate intervals.

In cars equipped with an alarm system, the headlamps cannot be cleaned when the hood is open.

Do not use the washers when the washer fluid reservoir is empty; otherwise, you will damage the washer pump.
Only use the washers if the hood has been completely closed; otherwise, the headlamp washer system* may be damaged. Do not use the washers if there is any danger that the fluid will freeze on the windshield. If you do, your vision could be obscured. For this reason, use anti-freeze.◀

Window washer nozzles

The window washer nozzles are heated automatically* while the engine is running or the ignition is switched on.

Rear window wiper

0 Rear wipers parked

1 To switch on intermittent wipe :
Turn the cap to level **1**.
Operation is continuous in reverse gear.

The rear wiper does not move if the cap is in interval stage **1** before the ignition is switched on.

Cleaning the rear window

2 To clean the rear window during intermittent wipe :
Turn the cap further to level **2** and hold it there.

3 To clean the rear window when wipers are parked :
Turn the cap to level **3** and hold it there.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

Do not use the washers when the washer fluid reservoir is empty; otherwise, you will damage the washer pump.◀

WASHER FLUID

Washer fluid is flammable. Keep it away from ignition sources, only store it in the closed, original container, and keep out of reach of children; otherwise, there is a danger of injury. Comply with the instructions on the container.◀

Washer fluid reservoir

Only refill washer fluid that contains antifreeze when the engine is cool, to avoid contact with hot engine parts. Otherwise, fluid spills constitute a fire hazard and a risk to personal safety.◀

Fill with water and, if required, with a washer antifreeze, according to manufacturer's recommendations.

Mix the water and antifreeze before filling the washer fluid reservoir to make sure the correct concentration is maintained.◀

Capacity

Approx. 4.2 US quarts/4 liters.

CRUISE CONTROL*

The concept

Cruise control is available at vehicle speeds of at least approx. 20 mph or 30 km/h. The car then stores and maintains the speed that you specify using the button on the steering wheel.

Do not use cruise control when driving at constant speed is prevented by adverse conditions, e.g. winding roads, dense traffic or poor road conditions due to, e.g., snow, rain, ice or loose surfaces. Otherwise, you could lose control of the vehicle and cause an accident as a result.◀

Activating

1 Resuming cruise control

2 Activating/deactivating cruise control

3 Maintaining, storing and increasing speed

4 Maintaining, storing and decreasing speed

Indicator lamp in the speedometer lights up. The cruise control system is ready and can be activated.

Activating/deactivating cruise control

Press button **2**.

The system is automatically deactivated if:

- braking takes place
- the clutch is engaged
- the transmission is set on N
- the stability control system is on

Cruise control is not deactivated by depressing the accelerator pedal. Once the accelerator

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

pedal is released, the stored speed is achieved again and maintained.

The stored speed is cleared when the ignition is switched off.

Maintaining current speed

Press button **3**.

The system maintains and stores the current vehicle speed.

If, on a downhill grade, the engine braking effect is not sufficient, the controlled speed may be exceeded. On uphill grades vehicle speed may drop if the engine output is insufficient.

Increasing speed

Press button **3** repeatedly until the desired speed is reached. Every time you press the button, the speed increases by approx. 1 mph or 2 km/h.

Accelerating using the button

Press and hold button **3**.

The vehicle accelerates without pressure on the accelerator pedal. After the button is released, the driving speed is maintained and stored.

Decreasing speed

Press button **4** repeatedly until the desired speed is reached.

The functions here are the same as for increasing the speed or accelerating, except that the speed will be decreased.

Resuming a speed stored beforehand

Press button **1**.

The last speed stored is achieved again and maintained.

The stored speed is cleared when the ignition is switched off.

Display in tachometer*

Selected speed is displayed briefly.

If --- mph or --- km/h is displayed briefly in the tachometer, the conditions necessary for operation may not be fulfilled.◀

Malfunction

The warning lamp in the tachometer lights up if the system fails. A message appears on the Control Display.

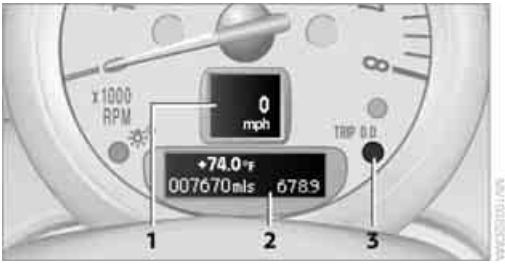
Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

CONTROLS OVERVIEW

TACHOMETER

Never operate the engine with the needle in the red overspeed zone of the gauge. In this range, the fuel supply is interrupted to protect the engine.

DISPLAYS IN TACHOMETER



1 Current vehicle speed

2 Odometer, trip odometer, and external temperature display

3 Resetting the trip odometer

Odometer and trip odometer

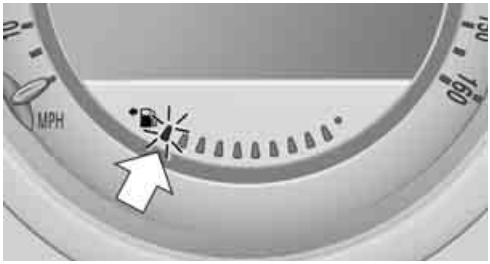
Resetting the trip odometer

With the ignition switched on, press knob **3** in the tachometer.

Units of measure

Select the respective units of measure, miles or km for the odometer as well as °F or °C for the external temperature, page 58.

FUEL GAUGE



Fuel tank capacity

Approx. 12.4 US gal/47 liters.

You will find information on refueling on page 188.

If the tilt of the vehicle varies for a longer period, when you are driving in mountainous areas, for example, the indicator may fluctuate slightly.

The arrow next to the gas pump symbol of the fuel gauge points toward the side of the vehicle with the fuel filler flap.

Reserve

Once the fuel level has fallen to the reserve zone of approx. 2.1 US gallons/8 liters the remaining LEDs change from orange to red, arrow, and a message is displayed briefly on the Control Display. The tachometer displays the remaining cruising range. When the range is less than approx. 30 miles/50 km, the message remains in the Control Display.

If the range displayed is less than 30 miles/50 km, be sure to refuel; other-

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

wise, engine functions are not guaranteed and damage could occur.◀

COMPUTER*

Displays in the tachometer

Press the button in the turn signal lever repeatedly to call up various items of information.

The following items of information are displayed in the order listed:

- ▷ Cruising range
- ▷ Average fuel consumption
- ▷ Current fuel consumption
- ▷ Average speed
- ▷ Outside temperature display

To set the corresponding units of measure, refer to Units of measure on page 58.

Cruising range

Displays the estimated cruising range available with the remaining fuel. The range is calculated on the basis of the way the car has been driven over the last 18 miles/30 km and the amount of fuel currently in the tank.

⚠ If the range displayed is less than 30 miles/50 km, be sure to refuel; otherwise, engine functions are not guaranteed and damage could occur.◀

Average fuel consumption

Calculated for the time the engine has been running.

With the trip computer, page 57, you can have the average fuel consumption for another trip displayed.

To reset average fuel consumption: press the button in the turn signal lever for approx. 2 seconds.

Current fuel consumption

Displays the current fuel consumption to allow you to see whether your current driving style is conducive to fuel economy with minimum exhaust emissions.

Average speed

Periods with the vehicle parked and the engine switched off are not included in the calculations of average speed.

With the trip computer, page 57, you can have the average speed for another trip displayed.

To reset average speed: press the button in the turn signal lever for approx. 2 seconds.

External temperature warning

When the displayed temperature sinks to approx. +37 °F /+3 °C, a signal sounds and a warning lamp lights up. There is an increased risk of black ice.

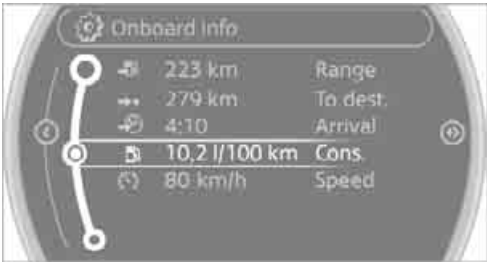
⚠ Even at temperatures above +37 °F /+3 °C ice can form. Therefore, drive carefully, e.g. on bridges and sections of road in the shade; otherwise, there is an increased accident risk.◀

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

Displays on the Control Display

1. "Vehicle Info"
2. "Onboard info" or "Trip computer"

Displays in the "Onboard info":



- ▷ Cruising range
- ▷ Distance from destination
- ▷ Estimated time of arrival if:
  - ▷ A distance has been entered manually in the computer, refer to information further below
  - ▷ A destination has been entered in the navigation system, page 109
- ▷ Average fuel consumption
- ▷ Average speed

Displays in the "Trip computer":

- ▷ Departure time
- ▷ Trip duration
- ▷ Trip distance

Both displays show:

- ▷ Average fuel consumption and
- ▷ Average speed.

Resetting the fuel consumption and speed

To reset the values for the average speed and average fuel consumption:

1. Select the respective menu entry.
2. Press the MINI joystick to confirm the message.

Resetting the trip computer

To reset all values:

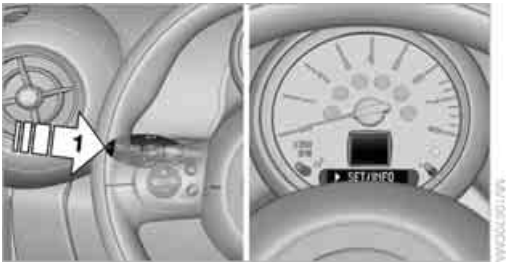
1. "Vehicle Info"
2. "Trip computer"
3. "Reset"

SETTINGS AND INFORMATION

Operating principle

Certain settings and information are only available when the ignition is switched on, the vehicle is at a standstill and the doors are closed.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG



1 Button for:
- ▷ Selecting display
- ▷ Setting values
- ▷ Confirming selected display or set values
- ▷ Calling up computer information 56

Symbol	Function
	Adjusting rain sensor* 51
	Calling up Check Control 62
	Displaying vehicle check 63
	Exiting the menu

Exiting displays

1. Briefly press the button in the turn signal lever repeatedly until "HOME" is displayed.
2. Press the button for a longer period.

Displays are also exited if no entries are made for approx. 8 seconds.

Next setting or item of information

1. While in a setting or information item, briefly press the button in the turn signal indicator repeatedly until "NEXT" is displayed.
2. Press the button for a longer period.

The display changes directly to the next setting or item of information.

UNITS OF MEASURE

To set the units of measure. The settings are stored for the remote control currently in use, refer also to Personal Profile on page 26.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

1. "Settings"
2. "Language/Units"

3. Select the desired menu item.
4. Select the desired unit.

SERVICE REQUIREMENTS

The remaining driving distance and the date of the next scheduled service are briefly displayed immediately after you start the engine or switch on the ignition.

The extent of service work required can be read out from the remote control by your MINI dealer.◀

Possible displays

1 Button for selecting information

Symbol	Function
mls 10000 12/2014	Engine oil*
mls 10000	Front brakes
mls 10000	Rear brakes
12/2014	Roadworthiness test
mls 10000 12/2014	Vehicle check

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

Symbol	Function
	Brake fluid
	Exit display 58
	Next setting or item of information 58

More information on the MINI Maintenance System can be found on page 202.

More information

Detailed information on service requirements

You can have further information on the scope of maintenance displayed on the Control Display, refer to page 16.

1. "Vehicle Info"
2. "Vehicle status"

3. "Service required"

Required maintenance procedures and legally mandated inspections are displayed.

You can request more detailed information on every entry:

Select an entry and press the MINI joystick.

To exit from the menu:

Move the MINI joystick toward the left. A list of selected maintenance work and legally required inspections, if necessary, is displayed.

Symbols

No service is currently required.

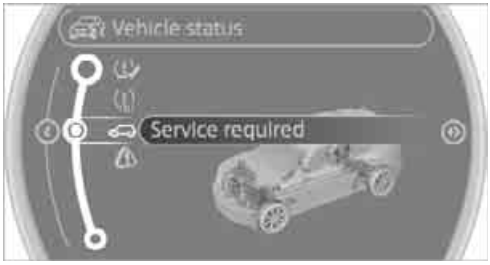
The deadline for service or a legally mandated inspection is approaching. Please schedule a service appointment.

The service deadline has already passed.

Entering deadlines for legally required inspections*

Make sure the date on the Control Display is always set correctly, page 62; otherwise, the effectiveness of Condition Based Service CBS is not ensured.

1. "Vehicle Info"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Service required"



Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

4. "§ Vehicle inspection"

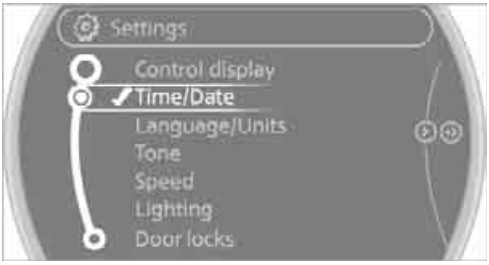
5. Open the deadline entry menu.
6. "Date:"
7. Create the settings.
8. Press the MINI joystick to apply the setting. The year is highlighted.
9. Turn the MINI joystick to make the adjustment.
10. Press the MINI joystick to apply the setting. The date entry is stored.

To exit from the menu:
Move the MINI joystick to the left.

CLOCK

Setting the time zone*

1. "Settings"
2. "Time/Date"



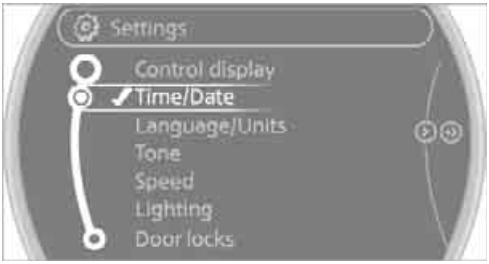
3. "Time zone:"
4. Turn MINI joystick until the desired time zone is set and press the MINI joystick.

   The time zone is stored.

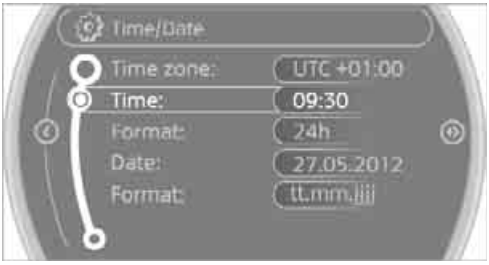
Setting the time

1. "Settings"

2. "Time/Date"



3. "Time:"



4. Turn the MINI joystick to set the hours and press the MINI joystick.
5. Turn the MINI joystick to set the minutes and press the MINI joystick.

The system accepts the new time.

Setting the time format

The settings are stored for the remote control currently in use, refer also to Personal Profile on page 26.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

1. "Settings"
2. "Time/Date"
3. "Format:"
4. Select the desired format and press the MINI joystick.

The time format is stored.

DATE

Setting date

1. "Settings"
2. "Time/Date"
3. "Date:"
4. Turn MINI joystick until the desired day is displayed and press the MINI joystick.
5. Create the necessary settings for the month and year.

The date is stored.

Setting the date format

1. "Settings"
2. "Time/Date"
3. "Format:"

4. Select the desired format.

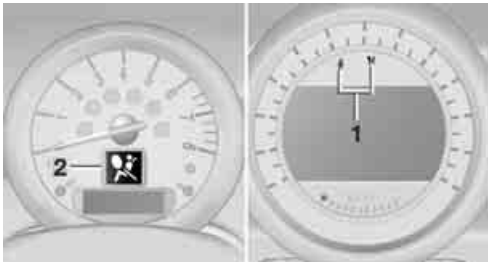
The settings are stored for the remote control currently in use, refer also to Personal Profile on page 26.

CHECK CONTROL

The concept

The Check Control monitors vehicle functions and alerts you to any malfunctions in the systems monitored. Check Control messages involve indicator and warning lamps in the display and, in some circumstances, an acoustic signal as well as text messages at the bottom of the Control Display.

Indicator and warning lamps



Indicator and warning lamps can light up in various combinations and colors in the indicator areas **1** and **2**.

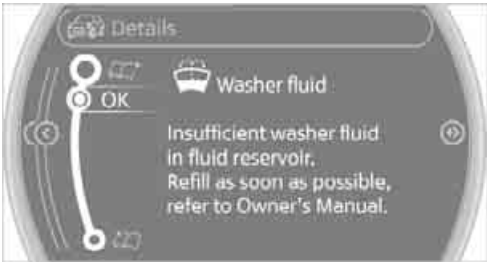
Text messages

Text messages at the upper edge of the Control Display explain the meaning of the displayed indicator and warning lamps.

Supplemental text messages

For most Check Control messages, you can view more information later, e.g. regarding the cause of a malfunction and how to respond, refer to page 64.

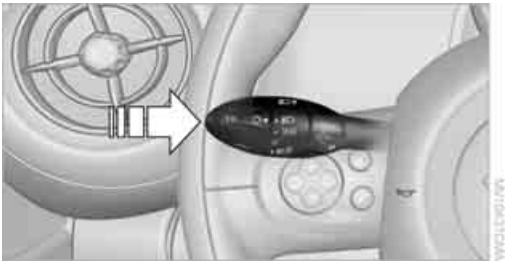
Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG



In urgent cases, this information will be shown as soon as the corresponding lamp lights up.

Exit display:
"OK"

Hiding Check Control messages



Press the button in the turn signal lever.

▷ Some Check Control messages are displayed until the malfunctions have been rectified. They cannot be hidden. If several malfunctions occur at the same time, they are displayed in succession.

▷ They are marked with the symbol shown here.

▷ Other Check Control messages are automatically hidden after approx. 20 seconds, but remain stored.

▷ They are marked with the symbol shown here.

The ⚠ symbol indicates that Check Control messages have been stored. Check Control messages can be viewed whenever it is convenient.

Viewing stored Check Control messages

Stored Check Control messages can only be displayed if the driver's door is closed.

1. Press the button on the turn signal indicator as often as necessary until "SET/INFO" is displayed.
2. Press and hold the button until the display changes.
3. Briefly press the button repeatedly until the corresponding symbol and "CHECK INFO" appear in the display.

4. Hold the button down.
   If there are no Check Control messages, then "CHECK OK" is displayed.
   If a Check Control message has been stored, the corresponding message is displayed. In addition, the text message appears on the Control Display.
5. Press the button to display any other messages.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

The following are displayed on the on-board monitor:

1. "Vehicle Info"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Check Control"

4. Select a text message.

SPEED LIMIT

Enter a speed, and a Check Control message will indicate when you reach this speed. This enables you, for example, to receive warnings if you exceed a speed limit in an urban area.
You are only warned of reaching this speed a second time if your vehicle speed falls below it again by at least 3 mph or 5 km/h.

Displaying, setting or changing the limit

1. "Settings"
2. "Speed"
3. "Warning at:"

4. Turn the MINI joystick to set the limit.
5. Press the MINI joystick to apply the setting.

The limit is stored.

Applying your current speed as limit

1. "Settings"
2. "Speed"
3. "Select current speed"

4. Press the MINI joystick.

The system adopts your current speed as the limit.

Activating/deactivating the limit

1. "Settings"
2. "Speed"
3. "Warning"

4. Press the MINI joystick.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

ALTERING SETTINGS

Language on the Control Display

1. "Settings"

2. "Language/Units"
3. "Language:"

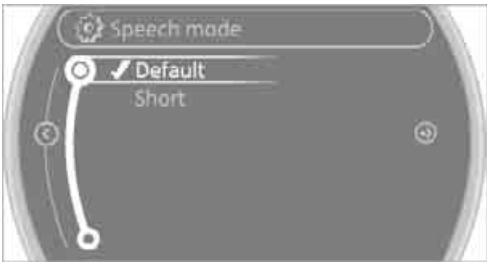
4. Select the desired language.

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Setting the voice dialog

Switch between a standard dialog and a short dialog.

1. "Settings"
2. "Language/Units"
3. "Speech mode:"
4. Select the desired dialog.

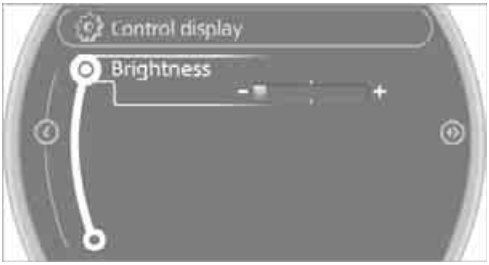


The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Brightness of the Control Display

The brightness is automatically adapted to the ambient lighting conditions. Note, however, that you can change the basic setting while the low beams are switched on. The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

1. "Settings"
2. "Control display"
3. "Brightness"



4. Turn the MINI joystick until the desired setting is reached.
5. Press the MINI joystick.

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use. In bright conditions, for example, the brightness control may not be clearly visible.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

TECHNOLOGY FOR DRIVING COMFORT AND SAFETY

PARK DISTANCE CONTROL PDC*

The concept

PDC assists you with parking in reverse. Acoustic signals and a visual indicator warn you of the presence of an object behind the vehicle. The measurement is carried out by four ultrasonic sensors in the rear bumper.

These sensors have a range of approx. 6.5 ft/2 m. However, an acoustic warning does not sound until an object is approx. 24 in/ 60 cm from the rear corner sensors or approx. 5 ft/1.50 m from the rear center sensors. PDC is a parking aid that can display objects, which are slowly being approached, which is the usual case when parking a vehicle. Avoid approaching an object at high speed; otherwise, physical circumstances may lead to the system warning being issued too late.◀

Automatic mode

With the engine running or the ignition switched on, the system is activated automatically after approx. 1 second when you engage reverse gear or move the automatic transmission selector lever to position R. Wait this short period before driving.

Acoustic signals

As the distance between vehicle and object decreases, the intervals between the tones become shorter. If the distance to the nearest object falls to below roughly 1 ft/30 cm, then a continuous tone sounds.

If the distance remains constant, e.g. when driving parallel to a wall, the acoustic signal stops after approx. 3 seconds.

Malfunction

Indicator lamp lights up. PDC has failed. A message appears on the Control Display.Have the system checked.

To avoid this problem, keep the sensors clean and free of ice or snow in order to ensure that they will continue to operate effectively. When using a high-pressure cleaner, do not direct the jet toward the sensors for lengthy periods and only spray from a distance of at least 4 in/10 cm.

PDC with visual warning

To have the system show distances to objects on the Control Display. The contours of distant objects are shown on the Control Display even before the acoustic signal sounds. The display appears on the Control Display as soon as the transmission is shifted into reverse or the selector lever is moved into the R position.

System limitations

Even with PDC, final responsibility for estimating the distance between the vehicle and any obstructions always remains with the driver. Sensors, too, have blind spots in which objects cannot be detected. Moreover, ultrasonic detection can reach its physical limits with objects such as trailer tow bars and couplings, thin and wedge-shaped objects, etc. Low objects already indicated, such as curbs, may enter the sensors' blind spots before or after a continuous audible signal is given. Higher, protruding objects, such as wall ledges, may not be detectable. Therefore, always drive cautiously; otherwise, there is a risk of personal injury or property damage. Loud sound sources outside or inside the car can drown out the PDC signal.◀

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

DRIVING STABILITY CONTROL SYSTEMS

Your MINI has a number of systems that help to maintain the vehicle's stability even in adverse driving conditions.

The laws of physics cannot be repealed, even with driving stability control systems. An appropriate driving style always remains the responsibility of the driver. Therefore do not reduce the additional safety margin by engaging in hazardous driving thereby running the risk of an accident.◀

Antilock Brake System ABS

ABS prevents locking of the wheels during braking. Safe steering response is maintained even during full braking. Active safety is thus increased.

Braking safely, refer to page 97.

ABS is operational every time you start the engine.

Cornering Brake Control CBC

Driving stability and steering characteristics are further enhanced while braking in turns or during a lane change.

Electronic brake-force distribution EBV

The system controls the brake pressure in the rear wheels to ensure stable braking behavior.

Brake Assist

Rapidly depressing the brake causes this system to automatically develop maximum braking force. Thus, the system helps keep braking distance to a minimum. At the same time, all the benefits provided by ABS are exploited.

Do not reduce the pressure on the brake for the duration of the full braking application.

Dynamic Stability Control DSC

The concept

DSC prevents the driving wheels from losing traction when you pull away from rest or accelerate.

DSC also detects unstable driving conditions such as when the vehicle's rear end fishtails or the vehicle is sliding on its front wheels. In these cases, DSC helps the vehicle maintain a safe course within physical limits by reducing engine output and through braking actions at the individual wheels.

Every time that the engine is started, the DSC is ready to operate.

Deactivating DSC

Press the button until the DSC OFF indicator light on the speedometer is on and DSC OFF is displayed on the tachometer. DSC is deactivated. Stabilizing and propulsion promoting actions are no longer executed.

When driving with snow chains or to 'rock free' in snow, it can be helpful to switch off DSC for a brief period.

To increase vehicle stability, activate DSC again as soon as possible.

Activating DSC

Press the button again: the DSC indicator lamps in the display elements go out.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

For better control

The indicator light on the tachometer is flashing:
The DSC controls the driving and braking forces.

The indicator light DSC OFF on the speedometer is on and DSC OFF is displayed on the tachometer:
DSC is deactivated.

Dynamic Traction Control DTC*

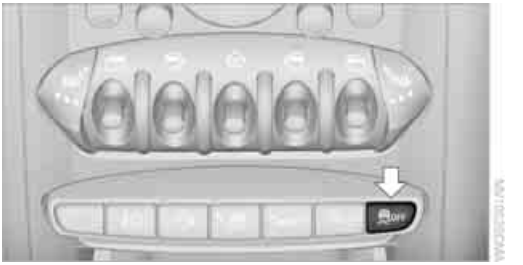
The concept

DTC is a type of DSC that is propulsion optimized for special road conditions such as uncleared snowy roads. The system ensures maximum propulsion though with restricted driving stability. You therefore need to drive with suitable caution.

In the following exceptional situations, it can be useful to briefly activate DTC:

- ▷ when driving on snow-covered inclines, in slush, or on uncleared snowy roads
- ▷ when rocking the vehicle free, driving out of deep snow or on loose surfaces
- ▷ when driving with snow chains

Activating the DTC*



Press the button; the indicator light DSC OFF on the speedometer comes on and TRACTION is displayed on the tachometer.
The Dynamic Stability Control DSC is deactivated; the Dynamic Traction Control DTC is activated.

For better control

The indicator light on the tachometer is flashing:
DTC controls the driving and braking forces.

The indicator light on the speedometer is on and TRACTION is displayed on the tachometer:
DTC is activated.

Deactivating the DTC*

Press button again, the indicator light DSC OFF on the speedometer and TRACTION on the tachometer go out.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

Deactivating the DTC* and DSC together

Press the button for at least 3 seconds; the indicator light DSC OFF on the speedometer comes on and DSC OFF is displayed on the tachometer. The Dynamic Traction Control DTC and Dynamic Stability Control DSC are both deactivated. There will be no more stabilizing interventions.

Interventions (differential lock*) in braking occur to improve propulsion when drive wheels are rotating unevenly, even when the DSC is deactivated.

Activating DSC

Press the button again: the indicator lamps go out.

Hill Assist

Hill Assist aids you in comfortably driving off on inclines. It is not necessary to use the parking brake for this.

1. Hold the MINI with the brake.
2. Release the brake and immediately drive off.

Hill Assist holds the car in place for approx. 2 seconds after the brake is released.

Depending on the load and gradient, the vehicle can roll backward slightly during this period. After you release the brake, immediately start driving since the Hill Assist only holds the vehicle for about 2 seconds, and it will start to roll backward.◀

ALL4 all-wheel drive system*

ALL4 is the all-wheel drive system of your MINI. The combined effects of ALL4 and DSC further optimize the traction and dynamic driving characteristics. The ALL4 all-wheel drive system variably distributes the drive force to the front and rear axle depending on the driving situation and prevailing road conditions.

SPORT BUTTON*

Pressing the button causes your MINI to respond even more sportily.

- ▷ Engine responds more spontaneously to movements of the accelerator.
- ▷ Steering response is more direct.
- ▷ Cooper S: the engine sounds more sporty in coasting mode.

With automatic transmission:

- ▷ More rapid gear shifting in Sport program.

Activating the system

Press the SPORT button.
The LED lights up.

SPORT is briefly displayed in the tachometer.

Deactivating the system

- ▷ Press the SPORT button again.
- ▷ Switch off the engine.

FLAT TIRE MONITOR FTM

The concept

The system does not measure the actual inflation pressure in the tires.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

The system detects a pressure loss in a tire by comparing the rotational speeds of the individual wheels while moving.

In the event of a pressure loss, the diameter and therefore the rotational speed of the corresponding wheel change. This is detected and reported as a flat tire.

Functional requirement

The system must have been initialized while the tire inflation pressure was correct; otherwise, reliable signaling of a flat tire is not ensured.

Initialize the system after every correction of the tire inflation pressure and after every tire or wheel change.

System limitations

Sudden serious tire damage caused by external influences cannot be indicated in advance.◀

A natural, even pressure loss in all four tires cannot be detected. Therefore, check the tire inflation pressure regularly.

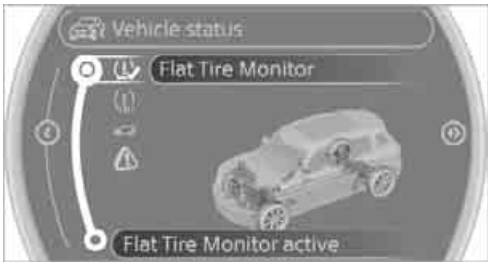
In the following situations, the system could be delayed or malfunction:

- ▷ System has not been initialized
- ▷ Driving on snowy or slippery road surface
- ▷ Performance-oriented style of driving: slip in the drive wheels, high lateral acceleration
- ▷ Snow chains are attached

Status display

The current status of the Flat Tire Monitor can be displayed on the Control Display, e.g. whether or not the FTM is active.

1. "Vehicle Info"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Flat Tire Monitor"



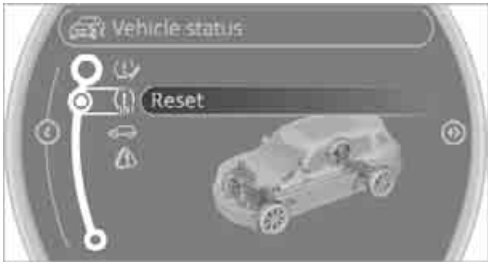
The status is displayed.

Initializing the system

The initialization process adopts the set inflation tire pressures as reference values for the detection of a flat tire. Initialization is started by confirming the inflation pressures.

Do not initialize the system when driving with snow chains.

1. "Vehicle Info"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Reset"



4. Start the engine, but do not start driving.
5. Select "Reset" to start the initialization.
6. Start to drive.

▷ The initialization is completed during driving, which can be interrupted at any time. When driving resumes, the initialization is continued automatically.◀

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

Indication of a flat tire

The warning lamps come on in yellow and red. A message appears on the Control Display. An acoustic signal also sounds.

There is a flat tire or a major loss in tire inflation pressure.

1. Reduce speed and stop the vehicle with caution. Avoid sudden braking and steering maneuvers.
2. Check whether the vehicle is equipped with normal tires or with run-flat tires*.

   Run-flat tires, refer to page 196, are identified by a circular symbol containing the letters RSC on the tire sidewall.

If the vehicle is not equipped with run-flat tires, do not continue driving; continuing to drive can result in serious accidents.◀

When a flat tire is reported, the Dynamic Stability Control DSC is activated.

Actions in the event of a flat tire

Normal tires*

1. Identify the damaged tire.

   To do so, check the inflation pressure in all four tires.
   The inflation pressure display of the Mobility System, page 212, can be used for this purpose.

   If the inflation pressure in all four tires is correct, the Flat Tire Monitor might not have been initialized. The system must then be initialized.

   If it is not possible to identify the damaged tire, contact your MINI dealer
2. Use the Mobility System to remedy the flat tire on the damaged wheel, refer to page 212.

Run-flat tires*

You can continue driving with a damaged tire at speeds up to 50 mph or 80 km/h.

Continued driving with a flat tire

When driving with a damaged tire:

1. Avoid sudden braking and steering maneuvers.
2. Do not exceed a speed of 50 mph or 80 km/h.
3. At the next opportunity, check the air pressure in all four tires.

   If the inflation pressure in all four tires is correct, the Flat Tire Monitor might not have been initialized. The system must then be initialized.

Possible driving distance with complete loss of tire inflation pressure:

The distance it is possible to drive depends on the load and the stress on the vehicle while driving.

With an average load, it may be possible to drive for approx. 50 miles/80 km.

When driving with damaged tires, the handling characteristics change, e.g. the vehicle will skid sooner when braking, braking distances will be longer, or self-steering response will change. Adapt your driving style accordingly. Avoid turning abruptly and driving over obstacles such as curbs, potholes, etc.

Since the possible driving distance depends to a considerable degree on the strain exerted on the vehicle while driving, it can be shorter or, with a gentle driving style, can also be longer, depending on the speed, road condition, external temperature, vehicle load, etc.

Drive cautiously and do not exceed a speed of 50 mph/80 km/h.
A loss of tire inflation pressure results in a change in the handling characteristics, e.g. reduced lane stability during braking, a longer braking distance and altered self-steering properties.◀

Vibrations or loud noises while driving can indicate final failure of the tire. Reduce your speed and bring the vehicle to a stop; otherwise, pieces of tire may come off, which could

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

result in an accident. Do not continue driving and contact your MINI dealer.◀

TIRE PRESSURE MONITOR TPM*

The concept

Measuring the inflation pressure in the four mounted tires. The system notifies you if there is a significant loss of pressure in one or more tires.

Functional requirement

The system must have been reset while the inflation pressure was correct; otherwise, reliable signaling of a flat tire is not ensured.

Always use wheels with TPM electronics to ensure that the system will operate properly.

Reset the system again after each correction of the tire inflation pressure and after every tire or wheel change.

System limitations

⚠ Sudden, serious tire damage caused by external influences cannot be indicated in advance.◀

The system does not operate correctly if it has not been reset. For example, a flat tire may be indicated despite correct tire inflation pressures.

The system is inactive and cannot indicate a flat tire:

- ▷ If a wheel without TPM electronics is mounted
- ▷ Interference with TPM by other systems or devices with the same transmission frequency.

Status display

The current status of the Tire Pressure Monitor can be displayed by the on-board computer, e.g. whether or not the TPM is activated.

1. "Vehicle Info"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Tire Pressure Monitor - TPM"

The status is displayed.

Status indicator on the on-board computer

The tire and system condition is indicated by the color of the tires.

A change in the tire inflation pressure during driving is taken into account.

A correction is only required when this is indicated by the TPM.

Green wheels

The inflation pressure corresponds to the desired state.

"TPM active" is displayed on the on-board computer.

One wheel yellow

There is a flat tire or substantial loss of tire pressure in the indicated tire.

All wheels yellow

- ▷ There is a flat tire or substantial loss of tire pressure in several tires.
- ▷ The system was not reset after a wheel change and thus issues a warning based on the inflation pressures initialized last.

Gray wheels

The system cannot detect a puncture.

Reasons for this may be:

- ▷ TPM is being reset.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

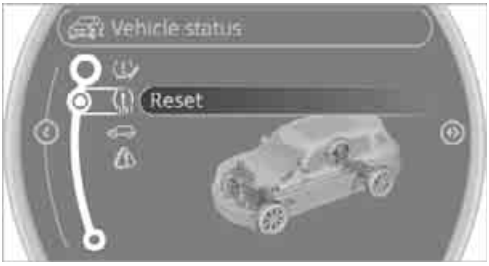
▷ Interference from systems or devices with the same transmission frequency.

▷ Malfunction.

Resetting system

Reset the system again after each correction of the tire inflation pressure and after every tire or wheel change.

1. "Vehicle Info"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Reset"



4. Start the engine – do not drive away.
5. Select "Reset" to start the initialization.
6. Start to drive.

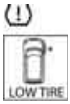
The tires are shown in gray and "Resetting TPM..." is displayed.

After driving a few minutes, the set inflation pressures in the tires are accepted as the target values to be monitored. The resetting process is completed automatically as you drive. The tires are depicted in green on the Control Display and "Status: TPM active" is displayed again.

The trip can be interrupted at any time. When driving resumes, resetting is continued automatically.

▷ If a flat tire is detected while the system is resetting, all tires on the Control Display are displayed in yellow. The message "Low tire!" is displayed.◀

Message with low tire inflation pressure



The warning lamps come on in yellow and red. A message appears on the on-board computer. An acoustic signal also sounds. The position of the faulty tire is displayed.

▷ There is a flat tire or substantial loss of tire pressure in the indicated wheel.

▷ The system was not reset after a wheel change and thus issues a warning based on the inflation pressures initialized last.

1. Reduce speed and stop the vehicle with caution. Avoid sudden braking and steering maneuvers.
2. Check whether the vehicle is equipped with normal tires or with run-flat tires.

   Run-flat tires, refer to page 196, are identified by a circular symbol containing the letters RSC on the tire sidewall.

When a low inflation pressure is reported, the Dynamic Stability Control DSC is activated.

Actions in the event of a flat tire

Normal tires

1. Identify the damaged tire.

   To do so, check the inflation pressure in all four tires. The inflation pressure display of the Mobility System, page 212, can be used for this purpose.

   If the inflation pressure is correct in all four tires, then the Tire Pressure Monitor may not have been reset. The system must then be reset.

   If it is not possible to identify the damaged tire, contact your MINI dealer.
2. Use the Mobility System to remedy the flat tire on the damaged wheel, refer to page 212.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

The use of tire sealant, e.g. Mobility System, can damage the TPM wheel electronics. In this case, have the electronics checked and replaced if necessary at your earliest opportunity.

Run-flat tires*

You can continue driving with a damaged tire at speeds up to 50 mph/80 km/h.

If the vehicle is not equipped with run-flat tires, do not continue driving; continuing to drive can result in serious accidents.◀

Continued driving with a flat tire

When driving with a damaged tire:

1. Avoid sudden braking and steering maneuvers.
2. Do not exceed a speed of 50 mph or 80 km/h.
3. At the next opportunity, check the air pressure in all four tires.

   If the inflation pressure is correct in all four tires, then the Tire Pressure Monitor may not have been reset. The system must then be reset.

Possible driving distance with complete loss of tire inflation pressure:

The distance it is possible to drive depends on the load and the stress on the vehicle while driving.

With an average load, it may be possible to drive for approx. 50 miles/80 km.

When driving with damaged tires, the handling characteristics change, e.g. the vehicle will skid sooner when braking, braking distances will be longer, or self-steering response will change. Adapt your driving style accordingly. Avoid turning abruptly and driving over obstacles such as curbs, potholes, etc.

Since the possible driving distance depends to a considerable degree on the strain exerted on the vehicle while driving, it can be shorter or, with a gentle driving style, can also be longer, depending on the speed, road condition, external temperature, vehicle load, etc.

Drive cautiously and do not exceed a speed of 50 mph/80 km/h.

A loss of tire inflation pressure results in a change in the handling characteristics, e.g. reduced lane stability during braking, a longer braking distance and altered self-steering properties.◀

Vibrations or loud noises while driving can indicate complete failure of the tire.

Reduce your speed and bring the vehicle to a stop; otherwise, pieces of tire may come off, which could result in an accident. Do not continue driving and contact your MINI dealer.◀

Malfunction

The small warning lamp flashes in yellow and then lights up continuously; the larger warning lamp lights up in yellow. On the on-board computer, the tires are shown in gray and a message appears.

No flat tire can be detected.

Display in the following situations:

- ▷ Wheel without TPM electronics is mounted: If need be, have it checked by your MINI dealer.
- ▷ Malfunction: Have the system checked
- ▷ TPM was unable to complete the resetting procedure; reset the system again.

The small warning lamp flashes in yellow and then lights up continuously; the larger warning lamp lights up in yellow. On the on-board computer, the tires are shown in gray and a message appears.

No flat tire can be detected.

Display in the following situation:

- ▷ Interference due to systems or devices that use the same radio frequency: The system automatically reactivates once it is outside of the field of interference.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

Message for unsuccessful system reset

Yellow warning light comes on. A message appears on the on-board computer.

The system has detected a wheel change, but has not yet been reset. It is not possible to provide a reliable warning about the current inflation pressure.

Check the tire inflation pressure and reset the system, page 73.

Declaration according to NHTSA/ FMVSS 138 Tire Pressure Monitoring Systems

Each tire, including the spare, should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label. If your vehicle has tires of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label, you should determine the proper tire inflation pressure for those tires. As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a tire pressure monitoring system TPMS that illuminates a low tire pressure telltale when one or more of your tires are significantly underinflated. Accordingly, when the low tire pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure. Driving on a significantly underinflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Underinflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability. Please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure, even if underinflation has not reached the level at which the TPMS low tire pressure telltale illuminates.

The TPMS malfunction indicator is combined with the low tire pressure telltale. When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously lit. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle startups as long as the malfunction exists. When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressure as intended. TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tires or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly. Always check the TPMS malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tires and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

AIRBAGS

The following airbags are located under the marked covers:

1 Front airbags

2 Knee airbag

3 Side airbags in backrests

4 Head airbags at the front and rear

Protective action

Observe the instructions on page 37 to ensure the best possible personal protection.◀

The front airbags help protect the driver and front passenger by responding to frontal impacts in which safety belts alone cannot provide adequate restraint. When needed, the head and side airbags help provide protection in the event of side impact. The relevant side airbag supports the side upper body area. The head air bag supports the head.
The airbags are designed to not be triggered in every type of collision, e.g. not in minor accidents, certain rollover situations or rear impacts.

Do not apply adhesive materials to the cover panels of the airbags, cover them or modify them in any other way.
Keep the dashboard and window on the passenger side free from obstruction, i.e. do not cover it with adhesive film or coverings, and do not affix any holders such as for a navigation device or a mobile phone.
Do not attach seat covers, cushions or other objects not specifically approved for seats with integral side airbags to the front seats. Do not hang items of clothing such as coats or jackets over the backrests. Do not attempt to remove the airbag retention system from the vehicle. Do not modify the individual components of the system or its wiring in any way. This includes the upholstery in the center of the steering wheel, on the instrument cluster, the doors, and the roof pillars as well as the sides of the headliner. Do not attempt to remove or dismantle the steering wheel.◀

Do not touch the individual components immediately after the system has been triggered, because there is a danger of burns.

Have the testing, repair, removal, and disposal of airbag generators executed only by your MINI dealer or a workshop that has the required explosives licenses.

Otherwise, unprofessional attempts to service the system could lead to failure in an emergency or undesired airbag activation, either of which could result in personal injury.◀

Warning notices and information about the airbags can also be found on the sun visors.

Automatic deactivation of the front passenger airbags

The presence of a passenger in the front passenger seat is detected by measuring the resistance of the human body. The system correspondingly

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

activates or deactivates the front, side, and knee airbags for the front passenger.

Make sure that the front passenger's feet remain in the footwell; otherwise, it is not possible to guarantee the function of the front passenger airbags.◀

The indicator lamp above the interior rearview mirror shows the current status of the front passenger airbags, deactivated or activated, refer to Status of front passenger airbags below.

Before transporting a child on the front passenger seat, read the safety information and follow the instructions under Transporting children safely, page 43.◀

Malfunction of the automatic deactivation

When teenagers and adults assume certain sitting positions, this can cause the front, side, and knee airbags to deactivate. The indicator lamp for the front passenger airbags lights up when this occurs. In such cases, the passenger should change his or her sitting position so that the front passenger airbags are activated and the indicator lamp goes out. If the desired airbag status cannot be achieved by changing the sitting position, transport the relevant passenger on a rear seat.

- Do not attach covers, cushions, ball mats or other items to the front passenger seat unless they are specifically recommended by the manufacturer of your MINI.
- Do not place items on the front passenger seat.
- Do not place items under the seat which could press against the seat from below.

Status of front passenger airbags

The indicator lamp for the front passenger airbags shows the functional status of the front passenger's front, side, and knee airbags in accordance with whether and how the front passenger seat is occupied. The indicator lamp shows whether the front passenger airbags are activated or deactivated.

- The indicator lamp lights up when a child in a specially designated child restraint system is properly detected on the seat or the seat is unoccupied.
  The front, side, and knee airbags for the front passenger are not activated.

  Most child seats are detected by the system. This particularly applies to child seats that were required by NHTSA at the time of manufacture of the vehicle. After installing a child seat, check that the indicator lamp for the front passenger airbags lights up. It indicates that the child seat has been detected and that the front passenger airbags are deactivated.◀
- The indicator lamp does not come on as long as a person of sufficient size and in a correct sitting position is detected on the seat.
  The front, side, and knee airbags for the front passenger are activated.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

Operational readiness of airbag system

As of radio readiness, page 46, the warning lamp lights up briefly to indicate that the entire airbag system and the belt tensioners are operational.

Airbag system malfunction

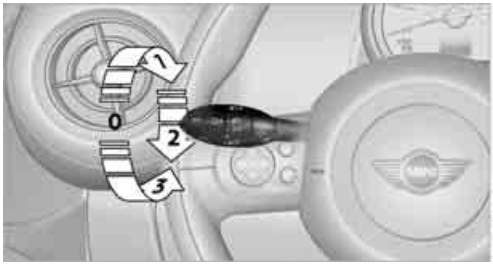
- ▷ The warning lamp does not come on when radio readiness is switched on.
- ▷ The warning lamp stays lit continuously.

⚠ In the event of a fault in the airbag system, have it checked without delay; otherwise, there is the risk that the system will not function as intended even if a severe accident occurs.◀

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

LAMPS

PARKING LAMPS/LOW BEAMS



0 Lamps off and daytime running lights

1 Parking lamps and daytime running lights

2 Low-beam headlamps and welcome lamps

3 Automatic headlamp control*, daytime running lights, welcome lamps, and Adaptive Light Control*

When you open the driver's door with the ignition switched off, the exterior lighting is automatically switched off if the light switch is in position **0**, **2** or **3**.

Switch on the parking lamps if necessary, switch position **1**.

Parking lamps

Turn the light switch to position **1**.
The front, rear and side vehicle lighting is switched on.

Activation of lights on one side of the vehicle for parking, page 81.

▷ The parking lamps will discharge the battery. Therefore, do not leave them on for unduly long periods of time; otherwise, the battery might not have enough power to start the engine.◀

Low beams

Turn the light switch to position **2**.
The low beams come on when the ignition is on.

Automatic headlamp control*

When the switch is in position **3**, the low beams are switched on and off automatically depending on ambient light conditions, e.g. in a tunnel, in twilight, or if there is precipitation. Adaptive Light Control* is active.

The headlamps may also come on when the sun is sitting low on a blue sky.

When driving into tunnels with bright overhead lights, there may be a delay before the headlamps come on.

The low beams remain switched on independent of the ambient lighting conditions when you switch on the fog lamps*.

If the daytime running lights are activated, page 80, the low beams are always switched on with the light switch in position **3** and the ignition on. The exterior lamps are automatically switched off after the vehicle is parked.

⚠ The automatic headlamp control cannot serve as a substitute for your personal judgment in determining when the lamps should be switched on in response to ambient lighting conditions. For example, the system cannot detect fog or hazy weather. To avoid safety risks, you should respond to these kinds of low-visibility situations by switching the headlamps on manually.◀

Welcome lamps

If you leave the light switch in the low beam or automatic headlamp control position when you switch off the ignition, the parking lamps and interior lamps come on for a certain time as soon as the vehicle is unlocked.

Pathway lighting

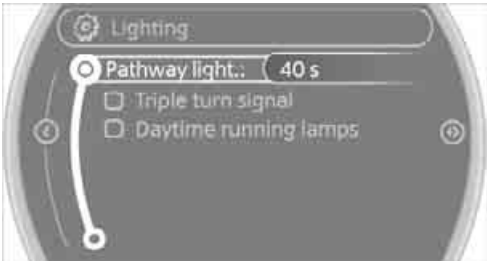
If you activate the headlamp flasher after switching off the ignition with the lamps switched off, the low beams come on and remain on for a certain time.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

The setting is stored for the remote control in use, refer to Personal Profile, page 26.

Setting the duration or deactivating the function

1. "Settings"
2. "Lighting"
3. "Pathway light.:"
4. Set a time of duration or deactivate the function.



The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Daytime running lights*

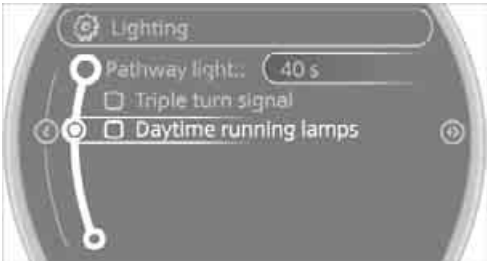
The light switch can remain in the lamps off, parking lamps or automatic headlamp control* position.
In the lamps off position, the exterior lighting is automatically switched off after the vehicle is parked. In the parking lamps position, the parking lamps will stay on after the ignition is switched off.

Switch on the parking lamps separately if needed.

Activating/deactivating daytime running lights

The setting is stored for the remote control in use, refer to Personal Profile, page 26.

1. "Settings"
2. "Lighting"
3. "Daytime running lamps"



The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

ADAPTIVE LIGHT CONTROL*

The concept

Adaptive Light Control is a variable headlamp control system that enables better illumination of the road surface. Depending on the steering angle and other parameters, the light from the headlamp follows the course of the road.

Activating Adaptive Light Control

With the ignition switched on, turn the light switch to position **3**, refer to page 79.

Standstill function*: to avoid blinding oncoming traffic, the Adaptive Light Control directs light toward the front passenger side when the vehicle is at a standstill.

In reverse, the Adaptive Light Control is not activated.

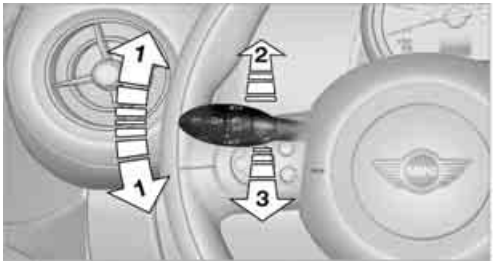
Malfunction

A message is displayed.

The Adaptive Light Control is malfunctioning or failed. Have the system checked as soon as possible.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

HIGH BEAMS/ ROADSIDE PARKING LAMPS



1 Turn signals/roadside parking lamps*

2 Switching on high beams

3 Switching off high beams/headlamp flasher

Roadside parking lamps, left or right*

The vehicle can be illuminated on one side for parking. Comply with local regulations when doing so.

Switching on

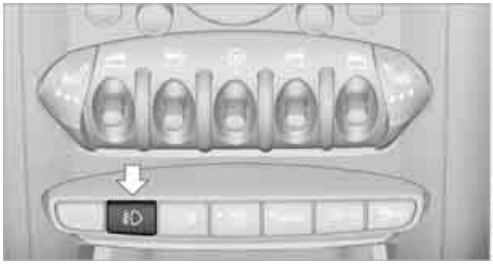
After parking the vehicle, press and hold the lever up or down, arrow **1**.

▷ The roadside parking lamps drain the battery. Therefore, do not leave them on for unduly long periods of time; otherwise, the battery might not have enough power to start the engine.◀

Switching off

Press the lever up or down to the pressure point.

FOG LAMPS*



Press the button to switch the lamps on and off.

Fog lamps*

The parking lamps or low beams must be switched on for the fog lamps to operate. The green indicator lamp lights up when the fog lamps are switched on.

Depending on your vehicle's equipment, the fog lamps are switched off when you activate the headlamp flasher or switch on the high beams.

▷ If the automatic headlamp control is activated, the low beams will come on automatically when you switch on the fog lamps.◀

INSTRUMENT LIGHTING

You can adjust the brightness of the instrument lighting only when the parking lamps or the low beams are on.

Increasing brightness

Press and hold the button until the desired brightness is reached.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

Reducing brightness

Press the button briefly.

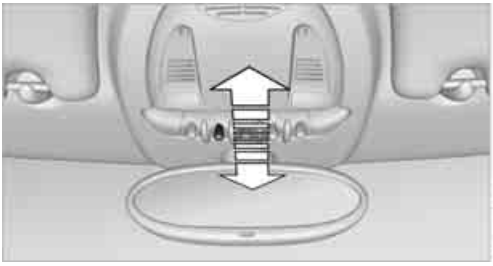
The brightness decreases every time the button is pressed.

INTERIOR LAMPS

The interior lamps, the footwell lamps*, the entry lamps*, and the cargo area lamp are controlled automatically.

▷ To reduce the drain on the battery, a short while after the ignition is switched off, refer to Start/Stop button on page 46, all lights in the vehicle's passenger compartment are switched off.◀

Switching interior lamps on/off manually



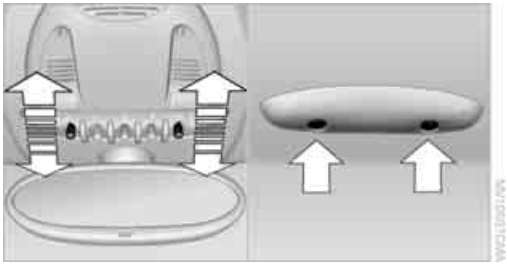
To switch the interior lamps on/off.

Press the switch.

To switch off the interior lamps permanently, press the switch for about 3 seconds.

Reading lamps*

Reading lamps are provided in the front and rear* adjacent to the interior lamps.

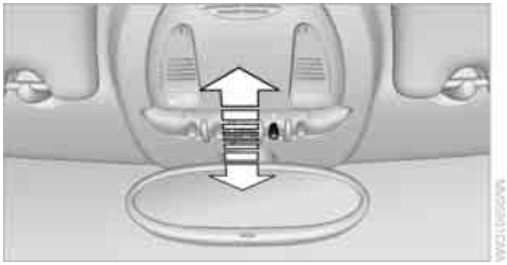


To switch the reading lamps on and off.

In the front: press the switch.

In the rear: press the button.

Ambient lighting*



The color and brightness of the ambient lighting can be changed.

▷ Press the switch forward.
The color changes in stages.

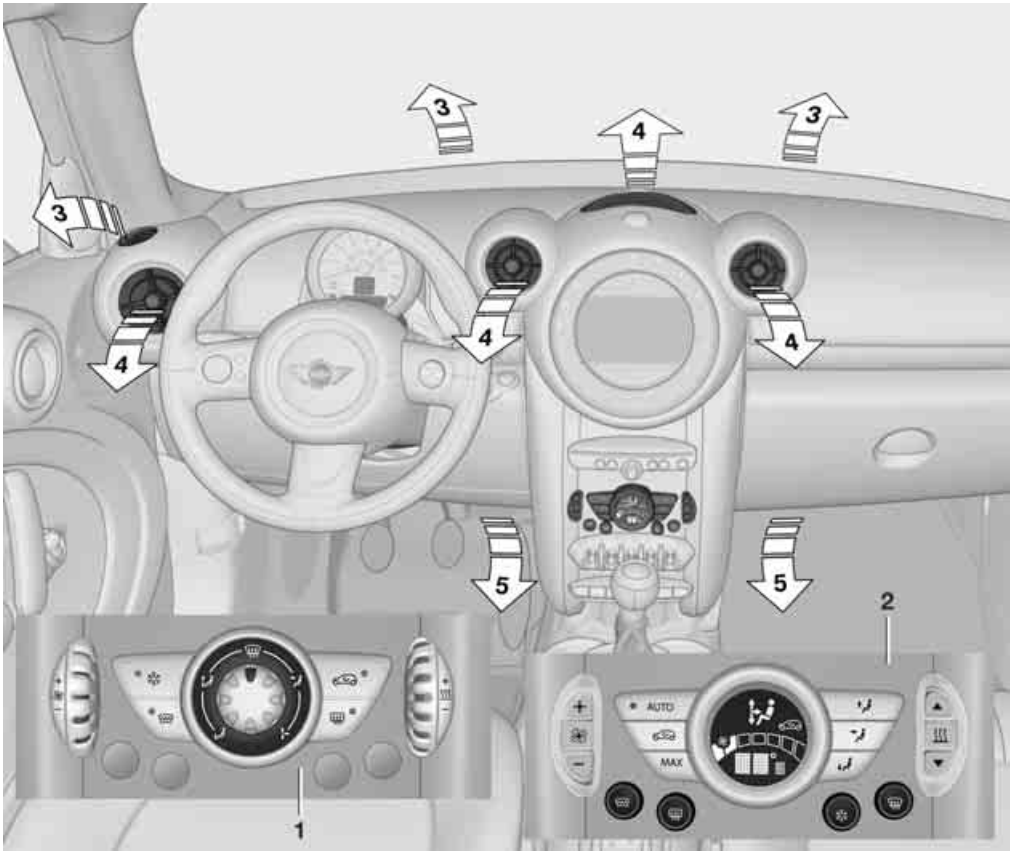
▷ Press the switch toward the rear.
The brightness changes in stages.

Intermediate settings and colors are possible.

▷ For a continuous color change in the ambient lighting, press and hold the switch toward the front for longer than 10 seconds.◀

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

CLIMATE



Equipment versions

Depending on your vehicle's equipment, your MINI contains an air conditioner or an automatic climate control*.

1 Air conditioner 84

2 Automatic climate control* 85

Air vents

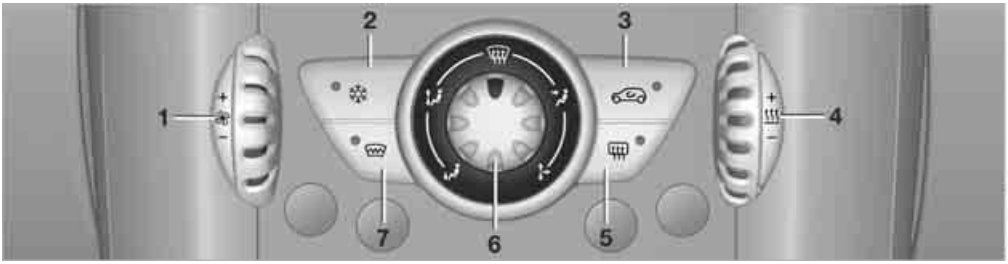
3 Airflow directed toward the windshield and side windows

4 Air to the upper body area, draft-free ventilation

5 Air to the footwell

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

AIR CONDITIONER



1 Air flow rate
2 Cooling function
3 Recirculated-air mode
4 Temperature
5 Rear window defroster
6 Air distribution
7 Windshield heating*

Air flow rate

Adjust the air flow rate. The higher the rate, the more effective the heating or cooling will be.

The air flow rate is lowered or switched off entirely to reduce the drain on the battery.

Switching the system on/off

Turn the air flow rate rotary switch to 0. Blower and air conditioner are completely switched off and the air supply is cut off.

Set any desired air flow rate to switch on the air conditioner.

Cooling function

When the cooling function is on, the air is cooled, dried, then reheated according to the temperature setting. This function is only available while the engine is running.

The cooling function helps prevent condensation on the windows or removes it quickly.

Depending on the weather, the windshield may fog over briefly when the engine is started.

To cool the air more quickly and intensely when the external temperature is high, you can switch on the recirculated-air mode.◀

Recirculated-air mode

If the air outside the car has an unpleasant odor or contains pollutants, shut off the supply to the interior of the car temporarily. The system then recirculates the air currently within the vehicle.

If the windows fog in recirculated-air mode, switch off the recirculated-air mode and increase the air volume if necessary. The recirculated-air mode should not be used over an extended period of time; otherwise, the air quality in the passenger compartment will deteriorate continuously.◀

Temperature

Turn upward, red, to increase the temperature.
Turn downward, blue, to decrease the temperature.

Rear window defroster

The defroster is switched off automatically after a certain time.

The rear window heating is lowered or switched off entirely to reduce the drain on the battery.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

Air distribution

Direct the flow of air to the windows, to the upper body area or to the footwell. Intermediate settings are possible.

Windshield heating*

The windshield heating is switched off automatically after a short time.

The front window heating is lowered or switched off entirely to reduce the drain on the battery.

Defrosting windows and removing condensation

1. Set air flow rate to the maximum level.
2. Set air distribution to position . Condensation is removed from the windows more quickly when the cooling function* is also activated.
3. Set to the highest temperature, red.
4. Deactivate recirculated-air mode.
5. Turn on windshield heating if necessary.
6. Turn on rear window defroster if necessary.

Microfilter

The microfilter captures dust and pollen. The microfilter is changed by your MINI dealer during routine maintenance work.

AUTOMATIC CLIMATE CONTROL*

1 Air flow rate, manual
2 AUTO program
3 Recirculated-air mode
4 Maximum cooling
5 Air distribution, manual
6 Temperature
7 Defrosting windows and removing condensation
8 Cooling function
9 Rear window defroster
10 Windshield heating*

Comfortable interior climate

AUTO program **2** offers the ideal air distribution and air flow rate for almost all conditions, refer to AUTO program below. All you need to do is select an interior temperature which is comfortable for you.

The following sections inform you in detail about how to adjust the settings.

Most settings are stored for the remote control currently in use, refer also to Personal Profile settings on page 26.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

Air flow rate, manual

Press the – button to reduce air flow. Press the + button to increase it.

You can reactivate the automatic mode for the air flow rate with the AUTO button.

The air flow rate is lowered or switched off entirely to reduce the drain on the battery. The display remains the same.

Switching the system on/off

Reduce the air flow by pressing the – button repeatedly until the system is switched off. All displays go out.

Press the AUTO button to switch the automatic climate control back on.

AUTO program

The AUTO program adjusts the air distribution to the windshield and side windows, toward the upper body area and into the footwell for you. The air flow rate and your temperature specifications will be adapted to outside influences in accordance with seasonal changes, e.g. sunlight.

The cooling function is automatically switched on along with the AUTO program.

Recirculated-air mode

Recirculated-air mode: the supply of outside air is permanently shut off. The system then recirculates the air currently within the vehicle.

If condensation starts to form on the inside window surfaces, press the AUTO button or switch off the recirculated-air mode and, if necessary, increase the air flow rate. The recirculated-air mode should not be used over an extended period of time; otherwise, the air quality in the passenger compartment will deteriorate continuously.◀

Maximum cooling

At external temperatures above 32 °F /0 °C and when the engine is running, you obtain a maximum cooling effect as soon as possible.

The automatic climate control goes into recirculated-air mode at the lowest temperature. Air flows at maximum rate from the vents for the upper body area. You should therefore open them for maximum cooling.

Air distribution, manual

The flow of air is directed to the windows, to the upper body area or to the footwell as selected.

You can switch the automatic air distribution back on by pressing the AUTO button.

Temperature

Set the desired temperature individually.

The automatic climate control achieves this temperature as quickly as possible regardless of the season, using maximum cooling or heating power if necessary, and then maintains it.

If you switch between different temperature settings in quick succession, the automatic climate control does not have enough time to achieve the set temperature.◀

Rear window defroster

The defroster is switched off automatically after a certain time. Depending on your vehicle's equipment, the upper wires serve as an antenna and are not part of the rear window defroster.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

Defrosting windows and removing condensation

Quickly removes ice and condensation from the windshield and front side windows.
For this purpose, also switch on the cooling function.
The windshield heating* is switched on automatically.

Windshield heating*

The windshield heating is switched off automatically after a certain time.

Cooling function

The passenger compartment can only be cooled while the engine is running.

When the cooling function is on, the air is cooled, dried, then reheated according to the temperature setting.

The cooling function helps prevent condensation on the windows or removes it quickly.

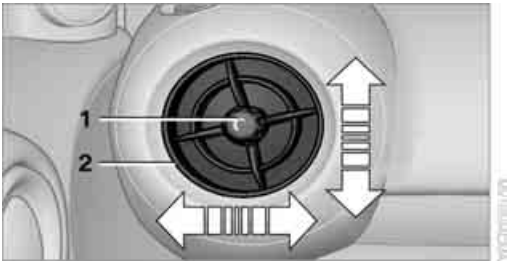
Depending on the weather, the windshield may fog over briefly when the engine is started. The recirculated-air mode may be switched on automatically.

When the AUTO button is pressed, the cooling function switches on automatically.

Microfilter/activated-charcoal filter

The microfilter captures dust and pollen. The activated-charcoal filter provides additional protection by filtering gaseous pollutants from the outside air. Your MINI dealer replaces this combined filter as a standard part of your scheduled maintenance.
You can call up further information in the service requirements display, page 59.

VENTILATION



1 Knob for continuous opening and closing
2 Jet for direction of air flow

Opening/closing

Turn the knob.

Direction of air flow

Swivel the entire jet.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

PRACTICAL INTERIOR ACCESSORIES

INTEGRATED UNIVERSAL REMOTE CONTROL*

The concept

The integrated universal remote control can replace as many as three hand-held transmitters for various remote-controlled devices, such as garage and gate openers and lighting systems. The integrated universal remote control registers and stores signals from the original hand-held transmitters.

The signal of an original hand-held transmitter can be programmed on one of the three memory buttons **1**. The system in question can then be operated by means of the programmed memory button **1**. The LED **2** flashes to confirm transmission of the signal.

If you decide to sell your vehicle one day, in the interest of your own security, remember to clear the stored programs before the vehicle leaves your possession, page 89.

To prevent possible damage or injury, before programming or using the integrated universal remote control, always inspect the immediate area to make certain that no people, animals or objects are within the travel range of the device. Comply also with the safety instructions supplied with the original hand-held transmitter.◀

Checking compatibility

If this symbol appears on the package or in the instructions supplied with the original hand-held transmitter, you can assume that the radio remote control device is compatible with the integrated universal remote control.

For additional information, please contact your MINI dealer or call: 1-800-355-3515.

You can also obtain information on the Internet at:
www.homelink.com
HomeLink is a registered trademark of Johnson Controls, Inc.

Programming

1 Memory buttons

2 LED

Fixed-code hand-held transmitters

1. Switch on the ignition, page 46.
2. When starting operation for the first time: press both outer memory buttons **1** for approx. 20 seconds until the LED **2** flashes rapidly. All stored programs are cleared.
3. Hold the original hand-held transmitter at a distance of approx. 1 in/2.5 cm to 3 in/8 cm from the memory buttons **1**.

   The required distance between the hand-held transmitter and the memory buttons **1** depends on the system of the respective original hand-held transmitter used.◀
4. Simultaneously press the transmit key on the original hand-held transmitter and the desired memory button **1** on the integrated universal remote control. The LED **2** flashes slowly at first. As soon as the LED **2** flashes rapidly, release both buttons. If the LED **2** does not flash rapidly after approx.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

60 seconds, alter the distance and repeat this step.

Canada: if the LED is not flashing rapidly after 60 seconds, change the distance and repeat the step or, if the programming was interrupted by the hand-held transmitter, press and hold the memory button and press the button on the hand-held transmitter for 2 seconds and release several times.

5. To program other original hand-held transmitters, repeat steps 3 and 4.

The corresponding memory button **1** is now programmed with the signal of the original hand-held transmitter.

You can operate the system with the engine running or with the ignition switched on.

If the system fails to function even after repeated programming, check whether the original hand-held transmitter uses an alternating-code system. To do so, either read the instructions for the original hand-held transmitter or hold down the programmed memory button **1** of the integrated universal remote control. If the LED **2** on the integrated universal remote control flashes rapidly and then remains lit for about two seconds, then the original hand-held transmitter uses an alternating-code system. If it uses an alternating-code system, program the memory buttons **1** as described under Alternating-code hand-held transmitters.◀

Alternating-code hand-held transmitters

To program the integrated universal remote control, consult the operating instructions for the device to be set. You will find information there on the possibilities for synchronization or programming of additional hand-held transmitters.
When programming hand-held transmitters that employ an alternating code, please observe the following supplementary instructions:

Programming will be easier with the aid of a second person.◀

1. Park your vehicle within the range of the remote-controlled device.

   Do not exceed a distance of 164 ft/ 50 m from the radio remote controlled device.◀

2. Program the integrated universal remote control as described above in the section Fixed-code hand-held transmitters.
3. Locate the button on the receiver of the device to be set, e.g. on the drive unit.
4. Press the button on the receiver of the device to be set. After step 4, you have approx. 30 seconds for the next step 5.
5. Press and hold the programmed memory button **1** on the integrated universal remote control for approx. 3 seconds.
   If necessary, repeat the step up to three times.

The corresponding memory button **1** is now programmed with the signal of the original hand-held transmitter.

Clearing stored programs

Press both outer memory buttons **1** for approx. 20 seconds until the LED **2** flashes: all stored programs are cleared.

It is not possible to clear individual programs.

Reassigning individual programs

1. Hold the original hand-held transmitter at a distance of approx. 1 in/2.5 cm to 3 in/8 cm from the memory buttons **1**.

   The required distance between the hand-held transmitter and the memory buttons **1** depends on the system of the respective original hand-held transmitter used.◀

2. Press the desired memory button **1** of the integrated universal remote control.

   If the LED **2** flashes slowly after approx. 20 seconds, press the transmit key of the original hand-held transmitter and release both buttons as soon as the LED **2** flashes

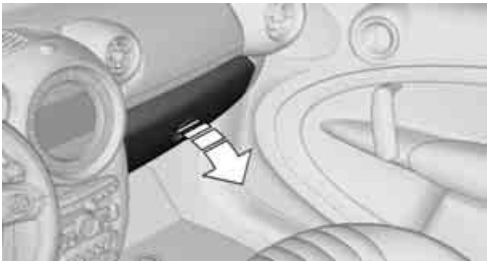
Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

rapidly.
If the LED **2** does not flash rapidly after approx. 60 seconds, alter the distance and repeat this step.

Canada: if the LED is not flashing rapidly after 60 seconds, change the distance and repeat the step or, if the programming was interrupted by the hand-held transmitter, press and hold the memory button and press the button on the hand-held transmitter for 2 seconds and release several times.

GLOVE COMPARTMENT

Opening



Pull the handle to open the cover.
The light in the glove compartment comes on.

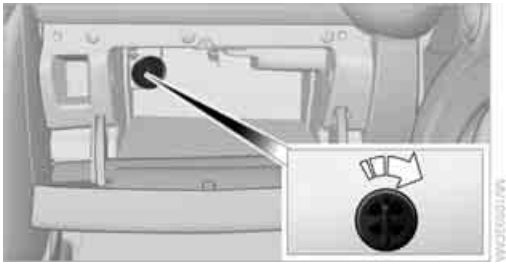
Closing

Fold cover up.

⚠ To prevent injury in the event of an accident, close the glove compartment after use while the vehicle is being driven.◀

Ventilation*

Depending on your vehicle's equipment, the glove compartment can be ventilated and, if the cooling function* is switched on, can also be cooled.



Opening

Rotate the switch in the direction of the arrow.

Closing

Rotate the switch in the opposite direction of the arrow until it is in the vertical position.

Depending on the temperature setting of the air conditioner or the automatic climate control, high temperatures may result in the glove compartment.

USB interface for data transmission*

Connection for importing data from a USB storage device, e.g. software update, refer to page 149.

The USB interface is located in the upper region of the glove compartment.

Observe the following when connecting:

- ▷ Do not use force when plugging the connector into the USB audio interface.
- ▷ Do not connect devices such as fans or lamps to the USB interface.
- ▷ Do not connect USB hard discs.
- ▷ Do not use the USB interface to recharge external devices.

CONNECTION FOR EXTERNAL AUDIO DEVICE

You can connect an external audio device such as a CD or MP3 player and play audio tracks over the vehicle's speaker system, refer to the Entertainment chapter starting on page 142.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

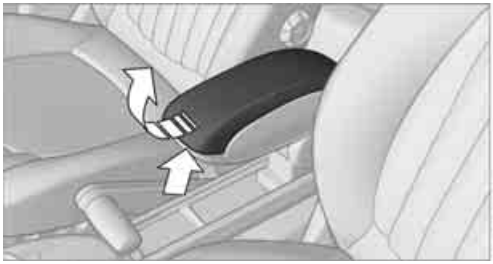
CENTER ARMREST*

Storage compartment

The center armrest between the front seats contains either a compartment or the cover for the mobile phone base plate* or the snap-in adapter*.

Opening

Press the button, arrow, and lift the cover.



STORAGE COMPARTMENTS

In the vehicle interior

Depending on your vehicle's equipment, you will find storage compartments in the front and rear doors and in the center console*.
Pockets* are provided on the backrest rear panels of the front seats.

Center Rail

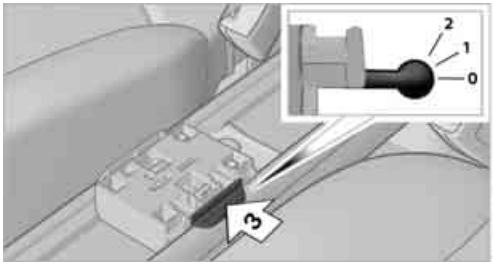
On the Center Rail, a variety of accessories can be fastened to a special base plate and moved to various positions, e.g. a cupholder* or a mobile phone holder*.

Do not attach accessory parts in the vicinity of the parking brake; otherwise, they can be damaged when the parking brake lever is actuated.◀

Example: cupholder

Inserting base plate

The lever **3** can be locked in three positions.



0 Locking

1 Sliding along the rail

2 Inserting base plate

For inserting, move the lever into position **2**.

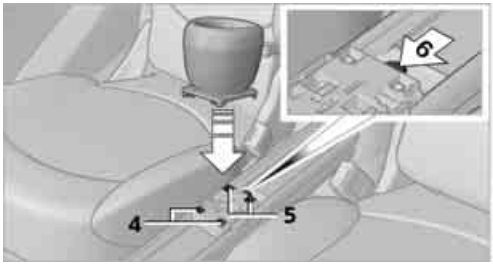
Sliding and locking

1. Push lever **3** into position **1**.
2. Slide the base plate.
3. Push the lever **3** down, into position **0**, and lock the base plate in place.

Lock the base plate in place before driving; otherwise, injuries may result in the event of an accident.◀

Installing cupholder

1. Lock base plate in place if necessary, refer to Sliding and locking.
2. Pull the lever **6** up to unlock the mounts.



3. First insert the cupholder into the front mounts **4** and then snap it into the rear mounts **5**.

   Make sure that the lever **6** is situated opposite the mount **4**.◀

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

Clothes hooks

There are clothes hooks on the grab handles in the rear passenger compartment.

⚠ Items of clothing hung from the hooks must not obstruct the driver's view. Do not hang heavy objects from the hooks; otherwise, they could endanger the car's occupants, e.g. in case of heavy braking or sudden swerving.◀

In the cargo area

Depending on your vehicle's equipment, you have the following storage options:

- ▷ Storage compartment under the flat load floor*
- ▷ Bag holder on the support for the cargo area cover

CUPHOLDERS AND ASHTRAY*

Cupholders*

⚠ Use lightweight, nonbreakable containers and do not transport hot beverages. Otherwise, there is an increased risk of injury in the event of an accident.◀

⚠ Do not push unsuitable containers forcibly into the cupholder. Otherwise, you may damage it.◀

Additional cupholders can be attached to the Center Rail in the rear passenger compartment.

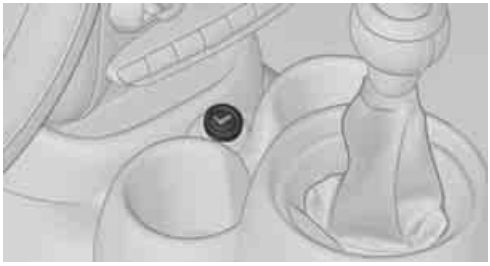
Ashtray*

The ashtray is located in one of the cupholders in the center console.

Emptying

Remove the entire ashtray.

Lighter



With the engine running or the ignition switched on, press in the cigarette lighter.

The lighter can be pulled out as soon as it pops back out.

⚠ Hold or touch the hot cigarette lighter by the knob only. Holding or touching it in other areas could result in burns.
When leaving the car, always remove the key so that children cannot operate the cigarette lighter and burn themselves.◀

CONNECTING ELECTRICAL APPLIANCES

In your MINI, when the engine is running or the ignition is switched on, you can use electrical devices such as flashlights, car vacuum cleaners, etc., up to approx. 140 watts at 12 volts, as long as one of the following sockets is available. Avoid damaging the sockets by attempting to insert plugs of unsuitable shape or size.

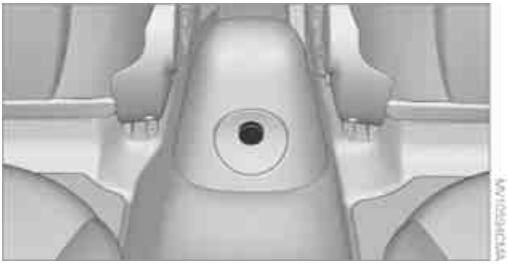
Cigarette lighter socket

Remove the lighter* or cover from the socket.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

Sockets*

In the rear passenger compartment



Pull out the cover.

In the cargo area

Pull out the cover.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

DRIVE ME.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

AT A GLANCE

CONTROLS

DRIVING TIPS

NAVIGATION

ENTERTAINMENT

COMMUNICATIONS

MOBILITY

REFERENCE

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

THINGS TO REMEMBER WHEN DRIVING

BREAK-IN PERIOD

Moving parts need breaking-in time to adjust to each other. Please follow the instructions below in order to achieve the optimal service life and economy of operation for your vehicle.

Engine and differential

Always obey all official speed limits.

Up to 1,200 miles/2,000 km

Drive at varying engine and road speeds, but do not exceed the following:

▷ Gasoline engine
4,500 rpm or 100 mph/160 km/h

Avoid full-throttle operation and use of the transmission's kickdown mode.

After driving 1,200 miles/2,000 km

Engine and vehicle speeds can be gradually increased.

Tires

Due to technical factors associated with their manufacture, tires do not achieve their full traction potential until after an initial break-in period. Therefore, drive cautiously during the first 200 miles/300 km.

Brake system

Brakes require an initial break-in period of approx. 300 miles/500 km to achieve optimized contact and wear patterns between brake pads and rotors. Drive cautiously during this break-in period.

Clutch

The function of the clutch reaches its optimal level only after a distance driven of approx. 300 miles/500 km. During this break-in period, engage the clutch gently.

Following part replacement

The same break-in procedures should be observed if any of the components mentioned above have to be renewed in the course of the vehicle's operating life.

GENERAL DRIVING NOTES

Closing liftgate

⚠ Only drive with the liftgate closed. Failure to do so may endanger passengers or other road users or may damage the vehicle in the event of an accident or a braking and evasive maneuver. In addition, exhaust gas may flow into the passenger compartment.◀

If special circumstances make it absolutely necessary to drive with the liftgate open:

1. Close all windows and the glass sunroof*.
2. Switch off recirculated-air mode and switch the airflow control of the air conditioner or automatic climate control to high, refer to page 84 or 86.

Hot exhaust system

⚠ As in all vehicles, extremely high temperatures are generated on the exhaust system. Do not remove the heat shields installed adjacent to various sections of the exhaust system, and never apply undercoating to them. When driving, standing at idle and while parking, take care to avoid possible contact between the hot exhaust system and any highly flammable materials such as hay, leaves, grass, etc. Such contact could lead to a fire, with the risk of serious personal injuries and property damage. Do not touch hot exhaust tail pipes. Otherwise, there is a risk of burns.◀

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

Hydroplaning

When driving on wet or slushy roads, reduce road speed. If you do not, a wedge of water can form between tires and road surface. This situation, known as hydroplaning, can cause partial or complete loss of tire contact with the road surface, so that the car cannot be steered or braked properly.◀

The risk of hydroplaning increases with declining tread depth on the tires, refer also to Tread depth on page 195.

Driving through water

Drive through water on the road only if it is not deeper than 1 ft/30 cm, and then only at walking speed at the most. Otherwise, the vehicle's engine, the electrical systems and the transmission may be damaged.◀

Parking brake on inclines

On inclines, do not hold the vehicle with the clutch; use the parking brake. Otherwise, greater clutch wear will result.◀

For information on driving off using Hill Assist, refer to page 69.

Braking safely

Your MINI is equipped with ABS. If you are in a situation which requires full braking, it is best to brake using maximum brake pressure. Since the vehicle maintains steering responsiveness, you can still avoid possible obstacles with a minimum of steering effort.

The pulsation of the brake pedal, together with the sound of hydraulic regulation, indicates that ABS is functioning properly.

Objects in the movement range of the pedals

Keep floor mats, carpet, and other objects out of the movement range of the pedals; otherwise, they may inhibit the function of the pedals during driving. Do not place additional floor mats onto an existing one or onto other objects. Only use floor mats that have been approved for the vehicle and can be appropriately fastened. Make sure that the floor mats are securely fastened again after they have been removed, e.g. for cleaning.◀

Driving in wet conditions

When roads are wet or there is heavy rain, briefly exert gentle pressure on the brake pedal every few miles. Monitor traffic conditions to ensure that this maneuver does not endanger other road users. The heat generated in this process helps dry the pads and rotors to ensure that. Then full braking force will be immediately available when it is needed.

Hills

To prevent overheating and the resulting reduced efficiency of the brake system, drive long or steep downhill gradients in the gear in which the least braking is required. Even light but consistent brake pressure can lead to high temperatures, brake wear and possibly even brake failure.◀

You can increase the engine's braking effect by shifting down, all the way to first gear if necessary. This strategy helps you avoid placing excessive loads on the brake system. Downshifting during manual operation of the automatic transmission, refer to page 49.

Never drive with the clutch held down, with the transmission in neutral or with the engine switched off; otherwise, engine braking action will not be present or there will be no power assistance to the brakes or steering. Never allow floor mats, carpets or any other objects to protrude into the area around the pedals; otherwise, pedal function could be impaired.◀

Corrosion on brake rotors

When the vehicle is driven only occasionally, during extended periods when the vehicle is not used at all, and in operating conditions where brake applications are less frequent, there is an

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

increased tendency for corrosion to form on rotors, while contaminants accumulate on the brake pads. This occurs because the minimum pressure which must be exerted by the pads during brake applications to clean the rotors is not reached.

Should corrosion form on the brake rotors, the brakes will tend to respond with a pulsating effect that even extended application will fail to cure.

When the vehicle is parked

Condensation forms while the automatic climate control is in operation, and then exits under the vehicle. Traces of condensed water under the vehicle are therefore normal.

In the MINI Cooper S, the coolant pump may continue to run for some time after the engine is switched off. This will generate noise in the engine compartment.

CARGO LOADING

To avoid loading the tires beyond their approved carrying capacity, never overload the vehicle. Overloading can lead to overheating and increases the rate at which damage develops inside the tires. The ultimate result can assume the form of a sudden blowout.◀

Avoid fluid spills in the cargo area as they could damage the vehicle.◀

EXPANDING CARGO AREA

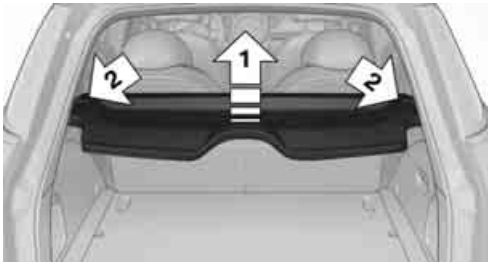
Cargo area cover

Do not place any objects on the cover; otherwise, they could endanger the car's occupants, e.g. in the case of braking or sudden swerving, or they may damage the cover.◀

When you open the liftgate, the roll-up cover is raised.

To load bulky luggage, the cover can be removed.

1. Unhook the lift straps from the liftgate.
2. Lift the cover slightly, arrow **1**, and pull it rearward out of the bracket, arrow **2**.



Rear seat backrest

Before folding down the rear seat backrests, ensure that the range of motion for the backrests is unobstructed. Ensure that there is no one within the range of motion of the backrest or that no one reaches into that region. Otherwise, injury or damage can result.◀

To ensure that the safety systems continue to provide optimized protection, observe the safety belt information on page 40.◀

Expand the cargo area by raising the split rear seat backrests to a steeper angle.

The backrests can be adjusted as needed in 10 stages between a comfort position and a transport position or can be folded down.

In the comfort position, the backrests are as far back as possible; in the transport position, they are in an approximately vertical position.

Before installing a child restraint system, observe the instructions starting on page 43.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

1. Hold on to the backrest near the top, for example on the headrest, and pull on the loop, arrow.
2. Lock backrest in the desired position or fold down.

Folding the backrests back into position

When folding the backrest, ensure that the lock properly engages. Otherwise, for example during braking and avoidance maneuvers, cargo can be thrown into the interior and endanger the occupants.◀

If the rear seat backrests are positioned at a steeper angle, do not install child restraint systems in the rear of the vehicle as their protective features may be ineffective.◀

When backrests are folded back from the folded-down position, they lock in the transport position.

To set the desired backrest angle or a comfortable position, pull the loop forward and adjust the backrest.

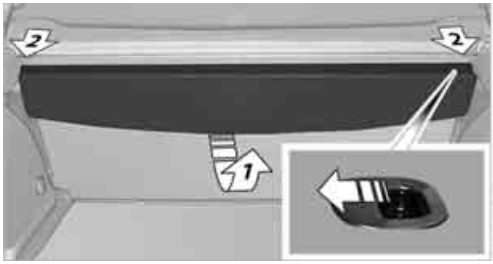
Cargo area privacy screen

Between the cargo area and the rear seat backrest, there is a cargo area privacy screen. It can be folded down and used as a loading platform.

When the rear seat backrests are folded down, do not fold the privacy screen upright. In an accident, cargo could fold down the privacy screen and damage it.◀

Folding down the privacy screen

1. If necessary, remove the cargo area cover, refer to page 98.
2. Fold the privacy screen up and to the rear, arrow **1**.



3. Release the locking mechanisms on the left and right sides, arrows **2**.
4. Grasp the outer sides of the privacy screen and guide it downward.

Do not exceed the maximum load of 330 lbs./150 kg of the privacy screen when it is in folded down into the loading platform position; otherwise, damage may occur.◀

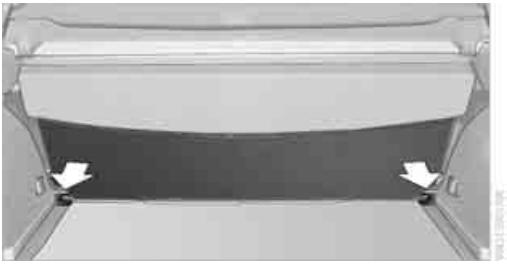
Folding the privacy screen forward

1. Fold down rear seat backrests.
2. Unlock privacy screen, see above.
3. Grasp the outer sides of the privacy screen and guide it forward onto the folded-down rear seat backrests.

Removing

1. Removing cargo area cover, page 98.
2. Fold the privacy screen up and to the rear and unlock it, refer to Folding the privacy screen forward.
3. Remove it from the guides on the cargo area floor, arrows, and remove the privacy screen.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG



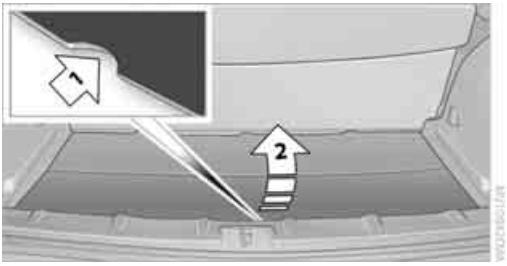
Flat load floor*

Do not exceed the maximum load of 150 kg for the load floor; otherwise, damage may result.◀

Access to the storage space

Under the load floor, there is storage space, e.g., for the cargo net*.

1. Reach into the recess, arrow **1**, at the back edge of the load floor.



2. Lift up load floor behind and fold forwards, arrow **2**.

Before closing the liftgate, put the load floor back on the cargo area floor.

Removing

If necessary, the load floor can be removed. To do this, lift the load floor at the recess, fold up and remove.

Cargo net*

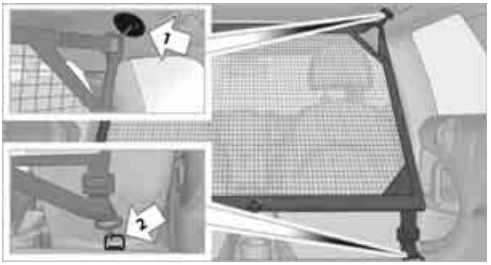
Ensure that the cargo net is firmly attached; otherwise, injuries may occur.◀

Before installing

1. Remove the pouch with the cargo net from the storage compartment under the pull-out floor panel in the cargo area.
2. Remove the cargo net from the pouch, then unroll and unfold it.

   After use, fold the cargo net together, roll it back up in the same way, and place it in the pouch so that it can be stowed under the floor panel again. When doing so, make sure that hooks and tensioning buckles do not rest against the rod elements.
3. Unfold the cargo net until the rod elements snap into place.

Installing behind the front seats



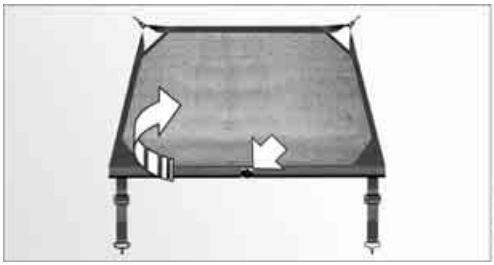
1. If necessary, remove the cargo area cover.
2. Fold down the rear seat backrests, refer to Expanding cargo area.
3. Insert each cargo net mounting pin all the way into its respective front mount in the headliner, arrow **1**, and push it forward.
4. Attach the hook, arrow **2**, at the bottom of each retaining strap to the respective eye on the vehicle floor.
5. Lash the cargo net securely. To do so, tighten the retaining straps at the tensioning buckles.

Removing

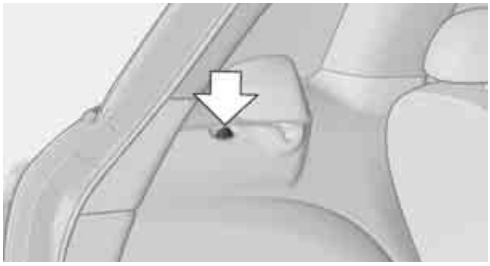
When removing and stowing the cargo net, proceed in the reverse sequence.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

To fold closed, press the release button, arrow.



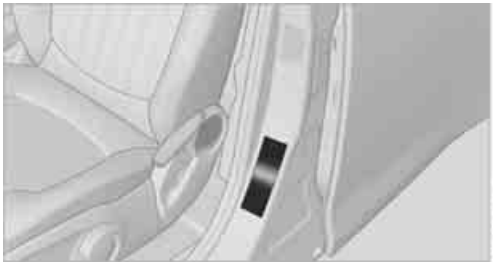
Bag holders*



Holders on the left and right side of the support for the cargo area cover, arrow, e.g. for hanging shopping bags or storage bags.

Only hang light shopping bags or suitable items on the holders. Otherwise, this may create a hazard due to flying objects, for example in the event of braking and evasive maneuvers.
Transport heavy luggage only if it is appropriately secured in the cargo area.◀

Determining cargo limit



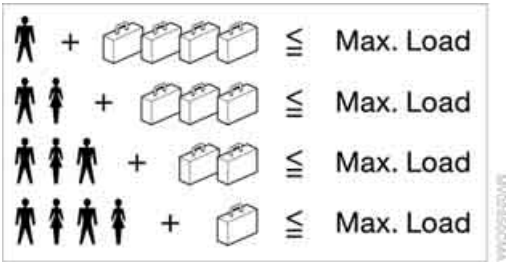
1. Locate the following statement on your vehicle's placard*:

   The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed XXX lbs. or YYY kg. Otherwise, damage to the vehicle and unstable driving conditions may result.◀

2. Determine the combined weight of the driver and passengers that will be riding in your vehicle.
3. Subtract the combined weight of the driver and passengers from XXX pounds or YYY kilograms.
4. The resulting figure equals the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity. For example, if the XXX amount equals 1,400 lbs. and there will be four 150-lb. passengers in your vehicle, the amount of available cargo and luggage load capacity is 650 lbs.:
   1,400 lbs. minus 750 lbs. = 650 lbs.
5. Determine the combined weight of luggage and cargo being loaded on the vehicle. That weight may not safely exceed the available cargo and luggage load capacity calculated in step 4.
6. If your vehicle will be towing a trailer, part of the load from your trailer will be transferred to your vehicle. Consult the manual for transporting a trailer to determine how this may reduce the available cargo and luggage load capacity of your vehicle.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

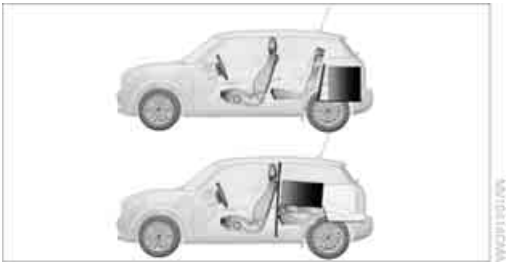
Load



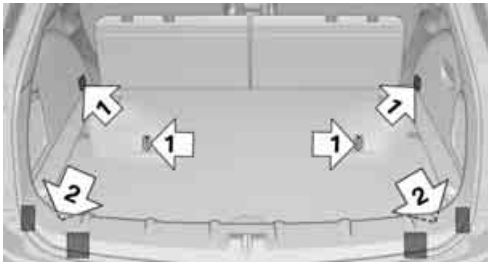
The permissible load is the sum of the occupants' weights and the weight of the cargo. The greater the weight of the occupants, the less cargo/luggage can be transported.

Stowing cargo

- ▷ Position heavy objects as low and as far forward as possible, ideally directly behind the rear seat backrests.
- ▷ Cover sharp edges and corners.
- ▷ For very heavy cargo when the rear seat is not occupied, secure each safety belt in the respective opposite buckle.
- ▷ Do not stack higher than the top edge of the backrests.
- ▷ Use the cargo net, refer to page 100. Ensure that no objects can penetrate through the net.



Securing cargo



- ▷ Secure smaller and lighter items using retaining or draw straps*.
- ▷ Heavy-duty cargo straps* for securing larger and heavier objects are available at your MINI dealer.
- ▷ These cargo straps are fastened using eight* securing eyes.

  Two of them are located on the side wall*, arrows **1**, of the cargo area.

  Two of them are located on the rear wall, arrows **2**, of the cargo area.

To use the lower lashing eyes, raise or remove the pull-out floor panel.

Comply with the information enclosed with the load-securing devices.

⚠ Always position and secure the cargo as described above, so that it cannot endanger the car's occupants, for example if sudden braking or swerves are necessary.
Do not exceed the approved gross vehicle weight and axle loads, page 226; otherwise, the vehicle's operating safety is no longer assured and the vehicle will not be in compliance with the construction and use regulations.
Heavy or hard objects should not be carried loose inside the car, since they could be thrown around, for example as a result of heavy braking, sudden swerves, etc., and endanger the occupants. Do not secure cargo using the fastening points for the tether strap, page 44; they may become damaged.◀

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

ROOF-MOUNTED LUGGAGE RACK*

A special rack system is available as an option for your MINI. Your MINI dealer will be glad to advise you. Comply with the installation instructions supplied with the rack system.

Loading roof-mounted luggage rack

Because roof racks raise the vehicle's center of gravity when loaded, they have a major effect on vehicle handling and steering response. You should therefore always remember not to exceed the approved roof load capacity, the approved gross vehicle weight or the axle loads when loading the rack.

You can find the applicable data under Weights on page 226.

The roof load must be distributed uniformly and should not be too large in area. Heavy items should always be placed at the bottom.

When loading, make sure that there is sufficient space for the movement of the glass sunroof.

Fasten roof-mounted cargo correctly and securely to prevent it from shifting or falling off during the trip.

Drive smoothly. Avoid sudden acceleration and braking maneuvers, and take corners gently.

REAR LUGGAGE RACK

A special rear-mounted luggage rack is available as an optional accessory. It does not require a trailer hitch.

Please comply with the precautions included with the installation instructions.

Mounting points

The mounting points are located under the covers in the bumper.
Remove the covers, refer to page 220.

Loading rear luggage rack

When loading, make sure that you do not exceed the approved gross vehicle weight and axle loads.

You can find the applicable data under Weights on page 226.

SAVING FUEL

Fuel consumption depends on a number of different factors. The implementation of certain measures, your driving style and regular maintenance can have an influence on fuel consumption and on the environmental impact.

Remove unnecessary cargo

Additional weight increases fuel consumption.

Remove attached parts no longer in use

Remove auxiliary mirrors, roof- or rear-mounted luggage racks whenever you are not using them.

Attached parts on the vehicle affect its aerodynamics and increase fuel consumption.

Check tire inflation pressure regularly

Check and, if necessary, correct tire inflation pressure at least twice a month and before starting on a long trip.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

Low inflation pressure increases rolling resistance and thus leads to greater fuel consumption and tire wear.

Drive off immediately

Do not wait for the engine to warm up while the vehicle remains stationary. Start driving right away, but at moderate engine speeds. This is the fastest way for the cold engine to reach its operating temperature.

Think ahead while driving

Avoid unnecessary acceleration and braking. by maintaining a suitable distance to the vehicle driving ahead.

Driving smoothly and anticipating impending traffic situations reduces fuel consumption.

Avoid high engine speeds

Use first gear only for driving off. In second and higher gears, accelerate smoothly to a suitable engine and road speed. In doing so, avoid high engine speeds and shift up early.

When you reach your desired traveling speed, shift to the highest suitable gear and drive at constant speed.

As a rule: driving at low engine speeds lowers fuel consumption and reduces wear.

Coasting

When approaching a red traffic light, take your foot off the accelerator and let the vehicle coast to a halt in the highest suitable gear.

On a downhill gradient, take your foot off the accelerator and let the vehicle coast in a suitable gear.

Fuel supply is shut off automatically when the vehicle is coasting.

Switch off the engine during lengthy stops

Switch off the engine when stopping for lengthy periods, e.g. at traffic lights, railroad crossings or in traffic jams.

Have the vehicle serviced

Have your vehicle serviced regularly to achieve good economy and a long vehicle life. The manufacturer of your MINI recommends having the vehicle serviced by a MINI dealer. Also note the MINI Maintenance System, page 202.

DRIVING ON POOR ROADS

Your MINI is at home on all roads and surfaces. It combines an all-wheel drive system* with the advantages of a normal passenger car.

⚠ Do not drive on unpaved terrain, as otherwise the vehicle may be damaged.◀

When you are driving on poor roads, there are a few points which you should strictly observe for your own safety, for that of your passengers, and for the safety of the vehicle:

- ▷ Familiarize yourself with the vehicle before beginning to drive and do not take risks under any circumstances.
- ▷ Adapt your speed to road conditions. The steeper and rougher the road surface is, the lower the speed should be.
- ▷ When driving on very steep uphill or downhill grades, make sure in advance that the engine oil and coolant levels are close to the maximum mark, refer to page 199.
- ▷ While driving, watch carefully for obstacles such as rocks or holes. Try to avoid these obstacles whenever possible.
- ▷ Make sure that the undercarriage does not touch the ground, for example on hilltops and bumpy roads. The ground clearance of the vehicle is a maximum of approx. 6.0 in/ 15 cm. Please note that the ground clearance can vary depending on loading and the driving conditions of the vehicle.
- ▷ Only drive through road surface water up to a maximum water depth of 1 ft/30 cm and only at walking speed; do not remain stationary.

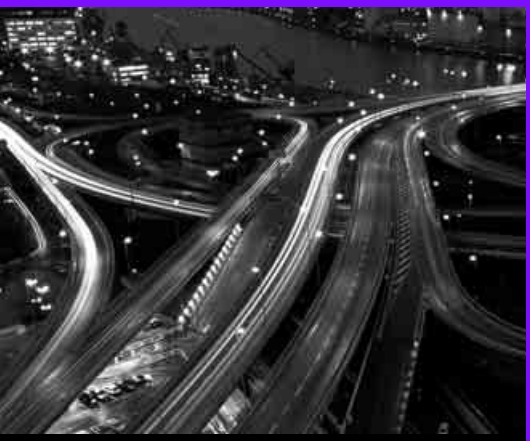
Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

- After driving through water at low speed, lightly press the brake pedal several times to dry the brakes and to prevent the braking effect from being reduced by wetness.
- Depending on the condition of the surface, it may be practical to briefly activate DTC, refer to DTC Dynamic Traction Control on page 68.
- If the drive wheels spin on one side, depress the accelerator pedal sufficiently so that the driving stability control systems can distribute the drive forces to the individual wheels.

After driving on poor roads, please observe the following points to maintain the driving safety of the vehicle:

- Clean the coarsest dirt from the body.
- Clean mud, snow, ice, etc. from the wheels and tires and check the tires for damage.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG



FOLLOW ME.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

AT A GLANCE

CONTROLS

DRIVING TIPS

NAVIGATION

ENTERTAINMENT

COMMUNICATIONS

MOBILITY

REFERENCE

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

NAVIGATION SYSTEM*

GENERAL INFORMATION

The navigation system can determine the precise position of the vehicle, with the aid of satellites and vehicle sensors, and can reliably guide you to every entered destination.

Enter data only with the vehicle stationary, and always give priority to the applicable traffic regulations in the event of any contradiction between traffic and road conditions and the instructions issued by the navigation system. Failure to take to this precaution can place you in violation of the law and put vehicle occupants and other road users in danger.◀

NAVIGATION DATA

General information

Navigation data are stored in the vehicle and can be updated.

You can obtain navigation data and an activation code from your MINI dealer.

Updating the data can take several hours, depending on the volume of data.

- ▷ Update data while driving to reduce the drain on the battery.
- ▷ The update is resumed automatically when a trip is continued after an interruption.
- ▷ Only the main functions of the navigation system are available during updating.
- ▷ You can inquire as to the status of the update.
- ▷ The data are stored in the vehicle.
- ▷ After the updating process is complete, the system restarts.
- ▷ The medium with the navigation data can be removed after the update.

Information on navigation data

1. "Navigation"
2. Open "Options".
3. "Navigation system version"

Information about the data version is displayed.

Updating the navigation data

1. Insert USB storage device with navigation data
   - ▷ into the USB interface in the glove compartment*
   - ▷ into the USB audio interface*.
2. Follow the instructions on the on-board computer.
3. Enter the activation code of the USB storage device.
4. Begin driving.

After you begin to drive, the system restarts and updates the navigation data as you drive*.

SELECTING NAVIGATION

1. "Navigation"

During route guidance, an arrow view or a map view is displayed on the on-board computer.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

DESTINATION ENTRY

In entering your destination you can select from among the following options:

- ▷ Manual destination entry, see below
- ▷ Selecting destination from address book, page 111
- ▷ Last destinations, page 112
- ▷ Special destinations, refer to page 112
- ▷ Entering the destination via map, refer to page 114
- ▷ Selecting home address, refer to page 112
- ▷ Entering destination via voice*, page 115

After selecting your destination you can proceed to start the route guidance, page 118.

MANUAL DESTINATION ENTRY

To make it easier to enter town/city names and street names, you are supported with the word-match principle, refer to page 116. This makes it possible to enter different spellings and completes your entry automatically so that stored town/city names and street names can be accessed quickly.

1. "Navigation"
2. "Enter address"

The system also supports you with the following features:

- ▷ If you do not enter a street, the system will guide you to the downtown area of a town or city.
- ▷ You can skip the entry of country and town/city if the current entries should be retained for your new destination.

Entering a state/province

1. "Navigation"
2. "Enter address"
3. Select "State/Province" or displayed country.

Entering a town/city

1. Select "Town/City/Postal Code" or displayed city.

2. Select letters, if necessary.
   A list of all towns/cities starting with this letter appears on the Control Display.

   To delete letters:

   - ▷ To delete individual numbers or letters: Turn the MINI joystick to highlight |← and press the MINI joystick.
   - ▷ To delete all numbers or letters: Turn the MINI joystick to highlight |← and press and hold the MINI joystick.
3. If necessary, enter more letters.
   The list gradually grows smaller each time you enter a new letter.

   To enter spaces, if necessary:
   Select the ␣ symbol.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

4. If necessary, move the MINI joystick to the right and change to the list of towns and cities and select a name.

Entering the postal code*

1. Select "Town/City/Postal Code" or displayed city.
2. Select the 1@+ symbol.
3. Select the digits individually.
4. Change to the list of postal codes and towns/cities.
5. Highlight the postal code.
6. Select the zip code.
   The corresponding destination is displayed.

Entering street and intersection

1. Select "Street" or displayed street.
2. Enter the street and intersection the same way you entered the town/city.

If there are several streets with the same name:

1. Move the MINI joystick to the right to change to the list of street names.
2. Highlight street.
3. Select the street.

Alternative: entering street and house number

1. Select "Street" or displayed street.
2. Enter the street the same way you entered the town/city.
3. "House number"
4. Select the digits.
5. Change to the list of house numbers.
6. Select a house number or range of house numbers.

Entering a street without a destination town/city

It is also possible to enter a street without entering a destination town/city. In this case all streets of the entered country are offered for selection. The related town/city is displayed after the street name.

If a town/city has already been entered, this entry can be canceled. This may be practical if the desired street does not exist in the entered destination, because, for example, it belongs to another part of the town/city.

1. "Navigation"
2. "Enter address"
3. Select "Street" or displayed street.
4. Change to the list of street names.
5. Select "In" with the currently displayed country.

6. Select the letters.
7. Change to the list of street names.
8. Highlight street.
9. Select the street.

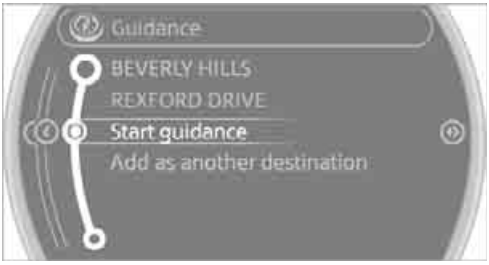
Starting route guidance after entering the destination

1. "Accept destination"
2. "Start guidance" or "Add as another destination".

▷ Setting "Route preference", refer to page 118.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

▷ Search for "Points of Interest at loc.", refer to page 112.



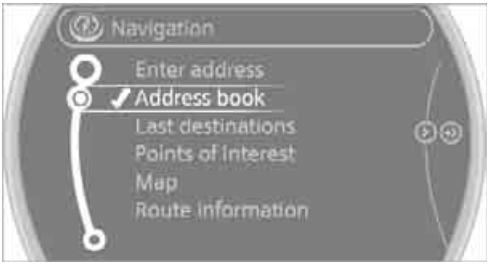
ADDRESS BOOK

To generate contacts, refer to page 161 or page 176.

Selecting a destination from the address book

1. "Navigation"
2. "Address book"
   Contacts with addresses are displayed if these addresses have been checked as destinations.

   If the contacts with addresses from the mobile phone* are not displayed, they must first be checked as destinations, refer to page 162 or page 177.

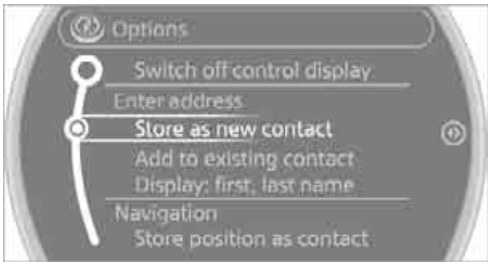


3. Select a contact in the list or if so desired, using the "A-Z search".
4. If necessary, select Business address or Home address.

Storing a destination in the address book

Store the destination in the address book after entering the destination.

1. Open "Options".
2. "Store as new contact" or "Add to existing contact".

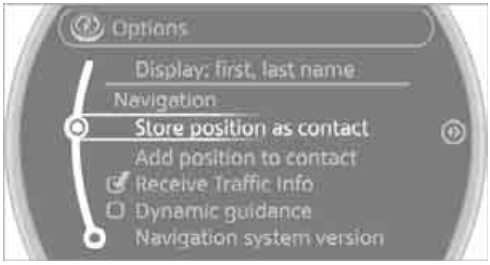


3. Select an existing contact, if available.
4. Select Business address or Home address.
5. Enter "Last name" and "First name" if you wish.
6. "Store in vehicle"

Storing the position

Your current position can be stored in the address book.

1. "Navigation"
2. Open "Options".
3. "Store position as contact" or "Add position to contact".



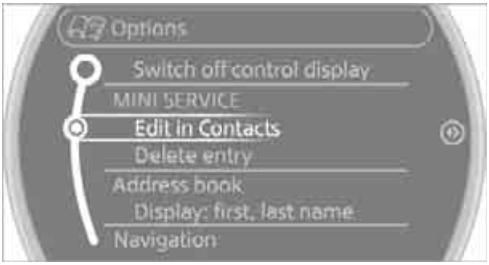
4. Depending on the selection, select an existing contact from the list or the type of address and enter the last and first name.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

5. "Store in vehicle"

Editing or deleting an address

1. "Navigation"
2. "Address book"
3. Highlight the entry.
4. Open "Options".
5. "Edit in Contacts" or "Delete entry".



Using home address as destination

The home address must be stored as a destination. Refer to Setting contact as home address, page 161 or page 178.

1. "Navigation"
2. "Address book"
3. "Home"

4. "Start guidance"

LAST DESTINATIONS

The last destinations are stored automatically. These destinations can be called up and used as a destination for route guidance.

Accessing last destinations

1. "Navigation"
2. "Last destinations"

3. Select the destination.
4. "Start guidance"

Editing a destination

Destinations can be edited, for example, to change the house number of an existing entry.

1. "Navigation"
2. "Last destinations"
3. Highlight the destination.
4. Open "Options".
5. "Edit destination"

Deleting the last destinations

1. "Navigation"
2. "Last destinations"
3. Highlight the destination.
4. Open "Options".
5. "Delete entry" or "Delete all last destinations".

SPECIAL DESTINATIONS

You can search for a special destination, e.g. a hotel or place of interest, and start route guidance to the corresponding location.

▷ The scope of information provided depends on the particular set of navigation data you are using.◀

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

Accessing search for special destinations

1. "Navigation"
2. Select "Points of Interest" search.

A-Z search

1. "A-Z search"
2. "Town/City"
3. "Category"
4. "Category details"

   For some special destinations, it is possible to select several category details. Move the MINI joystick to the left to exit category details.
   or
5. "Keyword"
6. Enter keyword.

   A list of the special destinations is displayed.
7. Select the special destination.
8. Select the symbol.
9. "Start guidance" or "Add as another destination".

   If several details are stored, then you can scroll through the pages.

   If a phone number is available, a connection can be established, if desired.

Category search

1. "Category search"
2. "Search destination"
3. Select or enter town/city.
4. "Category"
5. Select category.
6. "Category details"

   For some special destinations, it is possible to select several category details. Move the MINI joystick to the left to exit category details.
7. "Start search"
   A list of the special destinations is displayed.
8. Select the special destination.
   Details are displayed.
9. Select the symbol.
10. "Start guidance" or "Add as another destination".

If several details are stored, then you can scroll through the pages. If a phone number is available, a connection can be established, if desired.

Special destination location

As you input the search destination, you can select from among various options.

- ▷ "At current location"
- ▷ "At destination"
- ▷ "At different location"
- ▷ With active route guidance: "Along route"

Starting the search for special destinations

1. "Start search"
2. A list of the special destinations is displayed.
   - ▷ "At current location"
     The special destinations are displayed in order of their distance and are displayed with a direction arrow pointing toward the destination.
   - ▷ "At destination", "At different location", "Along route"
     The special destinations are displayed in

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

order of their distance from the search point.

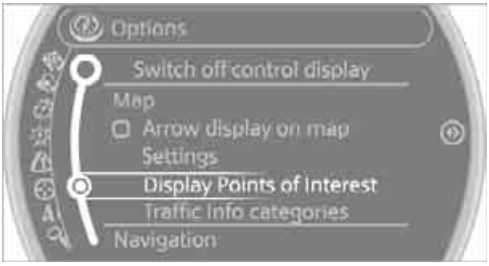
▷ Destinations of the selected category are displayed in the map display as symbols. The display depends on the map scale and the category.

3. Highlight special destination.
4. Select the special destination.
5. Select the symbol.
6. "Start guidance" or "Add as another destination".

Displaying special destinations in the map

To display symbols of the special destinations in the map:

1. "Navigation"
2. "Map"
3. Open "Options".
4. "Display Points of Interest"



5. Select the settings.

ENTERING THE DESTINATION VIA MAP

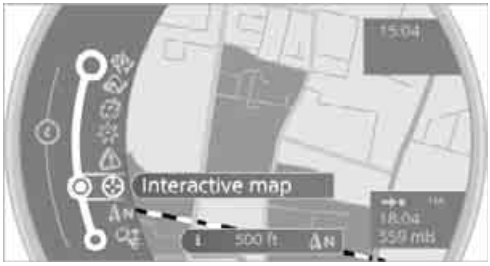
If you only know the location of a destination or street, then you can enter the destination with the aid of the map.

Selecting the destination

1. "Navigation"
2. "Map"

The map shows the current position of the vehicle.

3. "Interactive map"



4. Select the destination with the cross-hairs.
   ▷ Changing scale: turn the MINI joystick.
   ▷ Moving map: move the MINI joystick in the corresponding direction.
   ▷ Shifting map diagonally: move the MINI joystick in the corresponding direction and rotate the MINI joystick.
5. Press the MINI joystick to display additional menu items.
   ▷ Select the symbol: "Start guidance" or "Add as another destination".
   ▷ "Find points of interest": the search for special destinations is started.

Specifying the street

If the system does not detect any street, then a street name in the vicinity or the coordinates of the destination are displayed.

Additional functions

In the interactive map, the scale can be adjusted and the visible map section can be shifted. You can also access other functions by pressing the MINI joystick:

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

- Select the symbol and "Start guidance" if necessary.
- "Exit interactive map"
- Map display
- "Display destination"
  The section of the map around the destination is displayed.
- "Display current location"
  The section of the map around the current position is displayed.
- "Find points of interest", refer to page 112.

ENTERING DESTINATION VIA VOICE*

General information

- Voice activation system, refer to page 21.
- When entering a destination by voice, it is possible to switch between voice input and the on-board computer.
- Having the possible spoken commands read aloud: ›Voice commands‹

Saying the entries

- Countries, towns/cities, streets, and intersections can be either spoken aloud as an entire words or spelled in the system language, refer to page 65.

  Example: to enter a destination in a US state as a complete word, the system language must be English.
- Spell the entry if the language of the area is different from the system language.
- Speak the letters smoothly and avoid excessive emphasis and pauses.

Entering a town/city

The town/city can be spelled or entered as an entire word*.

The methods of entry depend on the navigation data in use and the country and language settings.◀

1. ›City‹ or ›Spell city‹.
2. Wait for the system prompt for the town/city.
3. Say the name of the town/city or if necessary, spell at least the first three letters.
4. Select city/town:
   - To select a recommended town/city: ›Yes‹
   - Select other city/town: ›New entry‹
   - To select an entry, e.g. ›Entry …‹
   - To show other entries in the list: ›next page‹
   - Spell the entry: ›Spell city‹

Similar-sounding towns/cities that cannot be differentiated by the system are compiled in a separate list and displayed as a town/city followed by three dots.
If necessary, select this entry with ›Yes‹. Then select the desired city/town in this list.◀

The town/city can also be selected from the list via the on-board computer:

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

Turn the MINI joystick until the destination is selected, and press the MINI joystick.

Entering a street or intersection

The street or intersection is entered in the same way as the town/city.

Entering house number

Depending on the data in the navigation system, house numbers up to the number 2,000 can be entered:

1. ›House number‹
2. Say the house number.
3. ›Yes‹ to confirm the house number.
4. ›Accept destination‹

Starting route guidance

›Start guidance‹

Route guidance starts immediately.

Adding further intermediate destinations

›Add as another destination‹

Further intermediate destinations can be added.

Saving destination

The destination is automatically added to the list of the last destinations.

PLANNING A TRIP WITH INTERMEDIATE DESTINATIONS

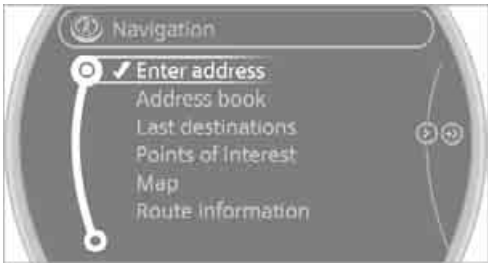
New trip

Various intermediate destinations can be entered for a trip. The trip destination must be entered first, refer to Destination input, page 109.

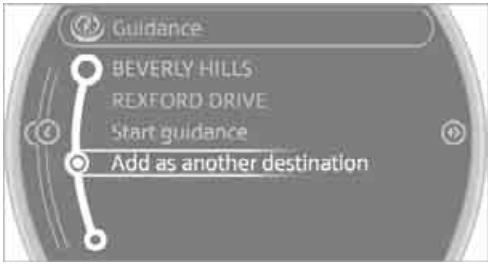
Entering intermediate destinations

A maximum of 30 intermediate destinations can be entered for one trip.

1. "Navigation"
2. Select the type of destination entry and enter the intermediate destination.



3. "Add as another destination"



4. Select the location where the intermediate destination is to be inserted.

Starting the trip

After entering all intermediate destinations: "Start guidance"

WORD-MATCHING PRINCIPLE

The system's word-matching principle makes it easier to enter the names of towns or streets. The system runs ongoing checks, comparing your destination entries with the data stored in the vehicle as the basis for instant response. The user benefits include:

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

- Town/city names can also be entered differently from the official names if you use a form that is customary in other countries.

  Example:

  Instead of "München", you can also enter the English spelling "Munich" or the Italian spelling "Monaco".
- When you are entering the names of towns/cities and streets the system will complete them automatically as soon as enough letters are available to ensure unambiguous identification.
- The system offers only those letters for selection of name entries that are stored in the vehicle. The system will not accept non existent names and addresses.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

ROUTE GUIDANCE

STARTING ROUTE GUIDANCE

1. "Navigation"
2. "Enter address"
3. Select the destination.
4. "Accept destination"
5. "Start guidance"

▷ The route is displayed on the on-board computer.

▷ The distance to the destination/intermediate destination and the estimated time of arrival are displayed in the map view.

▷ The arrow display is displayed on the on-board computer, if so desired.

TERMINATING ROUTE GUIDANCE

In the arrow or map view

1. "Navigation"
2. "Map"
3. Select the symbol.
4. "Stop guidance"

CONTINUING ROUTE GUIDANCE

If the destination was not reached during the last trip, route guidance can be resumed.

"Resume guidance"

ROUTE CRITERIA

General information

▷ You can influence the calculated route by selecting certain criteria.

▷ Route criteria can be changed during destination input and during route guidance.

▷ Street types are part of the navigation data and are taken into account in route planning, e.g. avoiding highways.

▷ The proposed route can differ from personal experience.

▷ The settings are stored for the remote control currently in use.

▷ Route guidance with traffic information, refer to page 124.

Changing route criteria

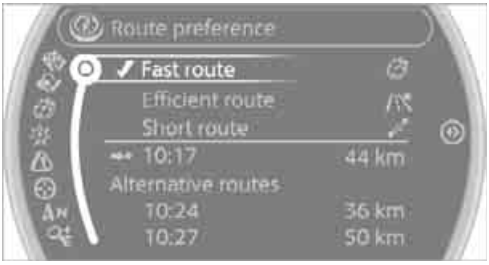
1. "Navigation"
2. "Map"
3. "Route preference"
4. Selecting a criterion:

   ▷ "Fast route": time-optimized route through a combination of the least possi-

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

ble distance and stretches of road that allow rapid driving.

- "Efficient route": optimized combination of the fastest and shortest possible route.
- "Short route": short distance without taking time into account.
- "Alternative routes": suggestions of additional alternate routes during route guidance.



5. Select additional route criteria, if desired. Where possible, the selected criteria will be avoided on the route.
   - "Avoid highways": avoid highways where possible.
   - "Avoid toll roads": avoid toll roads where possible.
   - "Avoid ferries": avoid ferries where possible.

The setting applies to the current route and to the planning of future routes.

If the route criteria "Avoid highways", "Avoid toll roads", or "Avoid ferries" are selected, then this can prolong the calculation time for the route.◀

ROUTE

There are various views of the route available during route guidance:

- Arrow display
- List of streets and towns/cities
- Map view, refer to page 120

Arrow display

The following information is displayed during route guidance:

- Large arrow: current direction of travel.
- Small arrow: indicates the next change of direction.
- Intersection view.
- Lane information.
- Traffic information.
- Distance to the next change of direction.
- Street name of the next change of direction.

Lane information

In the arrow display, the recommended lanes of multi-lane roads are each marked with a triangle.

- Filled triangle: optimum lane.
- Empty triangle: likewise possible lane. It can, however, also be possible to briefly make additional lane changes.

List of roads or towns/cities on the route

If the route guidance has been started, then you can display a list of the roads and towns/cities on the route. The distance to be traveled and traffic bulletins are displayed for each segment of the route.

1. "Navigation"
2. "Route information"

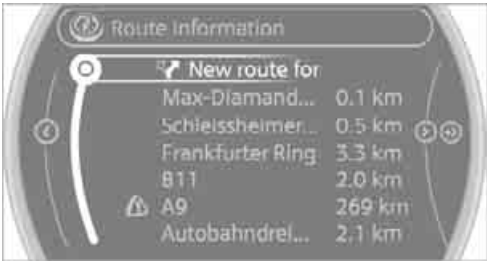
3. Highlight a section.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

Taking detours

During route guidance, prompt the navigation system to bypass certain route segments. In doing so, you will specify how many kilometers to travel before returning to the original route.

1. "Navigation"
2. "Route information"
3. "New route for:"



4. Turn the MINI joystick: enter the desired mileage.
5. Press the MINI joystick.

Resuming the original route

If the route section should no longer be bypassed:

1. "Navigation"
2. "Route information"
3. "New route for:"
4. "Remove blocking"

Recommended refueling

The remaining driving range is calculated, and gas stations along the route are shown.

1. "Navigation"
2. "Route information"
3. "Recommended refuel"
   A list of gas stations is displayed.
4. Selecting a gas station.
5. Select the symbol.
6. "Start guidance": the guidance to the selected gas station is started.

   "Add as another destination": the gas station is included in the route.

MAP DISPLAY

Displaying map view

1. "Navigation"
2. "Map"

Overview

1 Toolbar
2 Route segment with traffic obstruction
3 Road sign for traffic obstruction
4 Planned route
5 Current location
6 Upper status box
7 Lower status box

Lines on the map

In the map view, streets and roads are depicted with different colors and lines according to their classification. Dotted lines represent railroad and ferry connections. National borders are depicted with thin lines.

Traffic obstructions

Small triangles along the planned route identify route segments with traffic obstructions, depending on map scale. The direction of the triangles indicates the direction of the obstruction.

Road signs classify the obstructions.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

- Red road sign: the obstruction relates to the planned route or direction of travel.
- Gray road sign: the obstruction does not relate to the planned route or direction of travel.

Traffic information, refer to page 122.

Planned route

After route guidance is started, the planned route is displayed on the map.

Status boxes

Show/hide: press the MINI joystick.

- Upper status box: time, phone details, and entertainment details.
- Lower status box: symbol for active route guidance, traffic information status, arrival time, and distance from destination.

Toolbar

The following functions are available directly in the map view:

Symbol	Function
	Starting/stopping route guidance
	Switching voice instructions on/off
	Changing route criteria or selecting route alternatives
	Searching for special destination
	Displaying traffic bulletins
	Interactive map
	Adjusting map views or arrow display
	Changing scale

Changing map scale

"Interactive map"

- Moving map: move the MINI joystick in the corresponding direction.
- Shifting map diagonally: move the MINI joystick in the corresponding direction and rotate the MINI joystick.

Changing scale

1. Select the symbol and press the MINI joystick.
2. Changing scale: turn the MINI joystick.

Automatic scaling of the map

In the map view facing north, turn the MINI joystick in either direction until the scale AUTO is displayed. The map shows the entire path between the location and destination.

Settings for the map display

The settings are stored for the remote control currently in use.

1. Open "Options".
2. "Settings"
   - "Day/night mode"
     Select and adjust depending on light conditions. If "Traffic conditions/gray map" is activated, then this setting is not taken into account.
   - "Traffic conditions/gray map"*
     The map is optimized for displaying traffic bulletins. Symbols for the special destinations are no longer displayed.

Displaying arrow view in map display

When route guidance is active, the arrow view can be displayed additionally on the right side of the map display.

1. "Navigation"
2. Open "Options".

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

3. "Arrow display on map"

DESTINATION GUIDANCE VIA VOICE INSTRUCTIONS

Switching voice instructions on/off

The voice instructions can be switched on and off during route guidance.

1. "Navigation"
2. "Map"
3. Select the symbol.

Symbol	Meaning
	Voice instructions switched on
	Voice instructions switched off

Repeating a voice instruction

1. "Navigation"
2. "Map"
3. Highlight the symbol.
4. Press the MINI joystick twice.

Adjusting volume for voice instructions

The volume can be adjusted only while a voice instruction is being issued.

1. Repeat the last voice instruction, if necessary.
2. Turn the knob during the voice instruction to select the desired volume.

This volume is independent of the volume of the audio sources.

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

TRAFFIC INFORMATION*

Overview

In many congested areas, you can receive traffic information that is transmitted by radio stations. The traffic conditions are monitored by traffic control centers and the traffic information is updated periodically.
During route guidance, the traffic information relevant to the route you are planning to take is automatically shown and taken into account in route planning. Irrespective of whether route guidance is active, you can have the traffic information displayed in the map display or as an event list.

The symbol in the toolbar of the map view turns red if traffic information relates to the calculated route.

Real Time Traffic Information End-User Provisions

Certain MINI models equipped with navigation have the capability to display real-time traffic information. If your system has this capability the following additional terms and conditions apply:

An End-User shall no longer have the right to use the Traffic Data in the event that the End-User is

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

in material breach of the terms and conditions contained herein.

A. Total Traffic Network, a division of Clear Channel Broadcasting, Inc. ("Total Traffic Network") holds the rights to the traffic incident data and RDS-TMC network through which it is delivered. You may not modify, copy, scan or use any other method to reproduce, duplicate, republish, transmit or distribute in any way any portion of traffic incident data. You agree to indemnify, defend and hold harmless MINI of North America, LLC. ("MINI NA") and Total Traffic Network, Inrix, Inc (and their affiliates) against any and all claims, damages, costs or other expenses that arise directly or indirectly out of (a) your unauthorized use of the traffic incident data or the RDS-TMC network, (b) your violation of this directive and/or (c) any unauthorized or unlawful activities by you in connection herewith.

B. Total Traffic Network traffic data is informational only. User assumes all risk of use. Total Traffic Network, MINI NA, and their suppliers make no representations about content, traffic and road conditions, route usability, or speed.

C. The licensed material is provided to license "as is," and "where is". Total Traffic Network, including, but not limited to, any and all third party providers of any of the licensed material, expressly disclaims, to the fullest extent permitted by law, all warranties or representations with respect to the licensed material (including, without limitation, that the licensed material will be error-free, will operate without interruption or that the traffic data will be accurate), express, implied or statutory, including, without limitation, the implied warranties of merchantability, non-infringement fitness for a particular purpose, or those arising from a course of dealing or usage of trade.

D. Neither Total Traffic Network, Inrix, Inc. nor MINI NA will be liable to you for any indirect, special, consequential, exemplary, or incidental damages (including, without limitation, lost revenues, anticipated revenues, or profits relating to the same) arising from any claim relating directly or indirectly to use of the traffic data, and even if Total Traffic Network, Inrix, Inc., or MINI NA are aware of the possibility of such damages. These limitations apply to all claims, including, without limitation, claims in contract and tort (such as negligence, product liability and strict liability). Some states do not allow the exclusion or limitation of incidental or consequential damages, so those particular limitations may not apply to you.

Switching reception of traffic information on/off

1. "Navigation"
2. Open "Options".
3. Activate/deactivate "Receive Traffic Info".

Accessing traffic information

1. "Navigation"
2. "Map"

   "Traffic Info": traffic information for the surrounding area is listed here. The symbol turns red when traffic information relate to the calculated route.
3. "Traffic Info"
   First, traffic bulletins relating to the planned route are displayed.
   The traffic bulletins are sorted in the order of their distance from the current vehicle position.
4. Select traffic information.
   "More information": display additional information.
5. Scroll to the next or previous traffic information if desired.

Traffic bulletins in the map

When the traffic info map is activated, the picture on the Control Display is switched to a grayscale. This permits an optimized depiction of traffic information. The day/night mode is disregarded in this setting. The symbols for the special destinations are no longer displayed.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

1. "Navigation"
2. "Map"
3. Open "Options".
4. "Settings"
5. "Traffic conditions/gray map"

Symbols in map view

The symbols of traffic obstructions are displayed differently, depending on the scale of the map and location of the traffic obstruction in relation to the route.

Additional information in the map display

Depending on the map scale, the length, direction, and effects of a traffic obstruction are depicted by traffic symbols in the map or by bars along the planned route. The colors displayed depend on the information sent by the traffic information service.

- ▷ Red: traffic congestion
- ▷ Orange: stop-and-go traffic
- ▷ Yellow: heavy traffic
- ▷ Green: clear roads
- ▷ Gray: general traffic information such as road construction

The colors displayed depend on the information sent by the traffic information service.

Filtering of traffic bulletins

To set which traffic bulletins the system should display:

1. "Navigation"
2. "Map"
3. Open "Options".
4. "Traffic Info categories"
5. Select the desired categories.

Traffic bulletins of the selected categories are displayed.

- ▷ Traffic bulletins on incidents along the route are always displayed.
- ▷ For personal safety, traffic information that indicates a potential hazard can not be hidden.

Route guidance with traffic information

Semi-dynamic route guidance

With traffic information reception switched on, semi-dynamic route guidance is active.

The system takes into account the existing traffic information during route guidance. A message is displayed as a function of the route, the traffic information, and the possible alternate routes. The message displays the traffic information and in the event of a traffic obstruction, suggests an alternate route. The difference in distance and time between the original route and the alternate route are also displayed.

Taking an alternate route:

"Detour"

With particular hazards, e.g. objects on the roadway, a message is displayed without a possible alternate route.

It is also possible to take alternate routes can also be taken if the traffic reports are accessed via the list:

1. "Navigation"
2. "Map"
3. "Traffic Info"

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

4. "Detour information"
5. "Detour"

Dynamic route guidance

The route is automatically changed in the event of traffic obstructions.

- The system will not point out traffic obstructions on the original route.
- Traffic information will continue to be displayed on the map.
- Depending on the type of road and the nature and length of the traffic obstruction, the route can also be calculated so that you travel through the traffic obstruction.
- Certain hazards are displayed regardless of the setting.

To activate dynamic route guidance:

1. "Navigation"
2. Open "Options".
3. "Dynamic guidance"

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

WHAT TO DO IF...

What to do if…

- The current position cannot be displayed?
  The position is in an unrecognized region, in a poor reception area, or the system is in the process of determining the position. Reception is best when you have an unobstructed view to the sky.
- The route guidance does not accept an address without the street name?
  A downtown area cannot be determined for the town or city that has been entered. Input any street in the selected town/city and start route guidance.
- The route guidance does not accept a destination?
  The destination data is not contained in the navigation data. Select a destination that is as close as possible to the original.
- The letters for a destination cannot be selected during destination entry?
  Stored data do not contain the data of the destination. Select a destination that is as close as possible to the original.
- The map view is displayed in grayscale?
  When the traffic info map is activated, the picture on the Control Display is switched to a grayscale. This permits an optimized depiction of traffic information.
- Voice instructions are no longer issued before intersections during route guidance?
  The area has not been fully recorded yet, or you have left the recommended route and the system requires a few seconds to calculate a new route suggestion.
- The navigation system does not react to entries?
  If the battery was disconnected, it takes about 10 minutes before the system is once again operational.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

ROCK ME.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

AT A GLANCE

CONTROLS

DRIVING TIPS

NAVIGATION

ENTERTAINMENT

COMMUNICATIONS

MOBILITY

REFERENCE

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

ON/OFF AND TONE

The following audio sources have shared control elements and setting options:

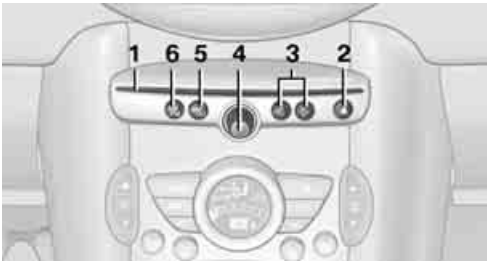
- ▷ Radio
- ▷ CD player
- ▷ External devices, e.g. MP3 player

CONTROLS

The audio sources can be operated using:

- ▷ Buttons near the CD player
- ▷ On-board computer
- ▷ Buttons on the steering wheel, refer to page 10

Buttons near the CD player



1 Drive for audio CDs

2 Ejecting CD

3 Station scan/track search
   - ▷ Change radio station.
   - ▷ Selecting a track for the CD player.

4 Sound output for entertainment on/off, volume
   - ▷ Press: switch on/off.
     When you switch on the unit, the radio station or track set most recently is played.
   - ▷ Turn: adjust volume.

5 Changing the audio source

6 Selecting waveband

SWITCHING ON/OFF

Entertainment audio output

Press the knob.

This symbol at the upper edge of the Control Display indicates that the sound output is switched off.

ADJUSTING VOLUME

Turn the knob to the desired volume.

The volume can also be adjusted on the steering wheel, refer to page 10.

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use; refer to Personal Profile, page 26.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

TONE CONTROL

Various tone settings can be changed, e.g. treble and bass or the speed-dependent volume control.
The tone settings are set for all audio sources at once.

The settings are stored for the remote control currently in use; refer to Personal Profile, page 26.

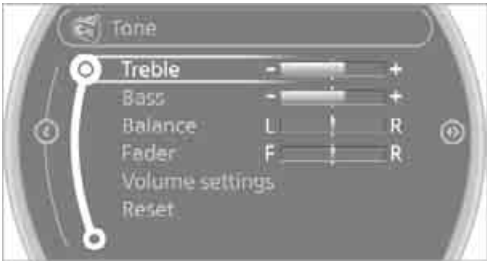
Treble, bass, balance, fader

- ▷ "Treble": treble adjustment.
- ▷ "Bass": bass adjustment.
- ▷ "Balance": volume distribution right/left.
- ▷ "Fader": volume distribution front/back.

Adjustments

1. "CD/Multimedia", "Radio" or "Settings".
2. "Tone"

3. Selecting the desired tone setting.



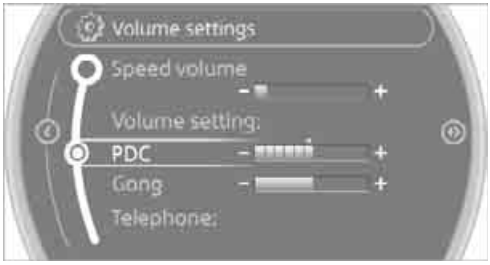
4. To adjust: turn the MINI joystick.
5. To store: press the MINI joystick.

Volume levels

- ▷ "Speed volume": volume is adapted depending on the speed
- ▷ "PDC"*: volume of the PDC acoustic signal relative to the entertainment sound output
- ▷ "Gong": volume of the acoustic signal, e.g. for the acoustic seat belt warning relative to the entertainment sound output
- ▷ "Microphone"*: volume of the microphone during a phone conversation.
- ▷ "Loudspeak."*: volume of the speaker during a phone conversation.

Adjustments

1. "CD/Multimedia", "Radio" or "Settings".
2. "Tone"
3. "Volume settings"
4. Select the desired volume setting.



5. To adjust: turn the MINI joystick.
6. To store: press the MINI joystick.

Resetting tone settings

All tone settings can be reset to the default value.

1. "CD/Multimedia", "Radio" or "Settings".
2. "Tone"
3. "Reset"

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

RADIO

Your radio is designed for reception of the following stations:

- ▷ FM and AM
- ▷ HD Radio*
- ▷ Satellite radio*

AM/FM STATION

Selecting a station

Press the knob if the sound output is switched off.

1. "Radio"

2. "FM" or "AM"
3. Select the desired station.

The selected station is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Changing stations

Turn and press the MINI joystick

or

Press the ◀ ▶ button for the corresponding direction

or

Press the buttons on the steering wheel, refer to page 10.

Selecting a station manually

Station selection via the frequency.

1. "Radio"
2. "FM" or "AM"
3. "Manual"
4. Select the frequency: turn the MINI joystick.

To store the station: press the MINI joystick.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

Storing stations

1. "Radio"
2. "FM" or "AM"
3. Select the desired station.

4. Press the MINI joystick.
5. Select the desired memory location.

Press and hold the MINI joystick to save a radio station that appears in the list of stations, but is not being listened to.

The stations are stored for the remote control currently in use.

Radio Data System RDS*

In the FM frequency range, additional information is transmitted via RDS. If the reception conditions are good, the station names are shown on the Control Display. If the reception is weak or disrupted, it can take some time before the station names are displayed.

Switching the RDS on/off

1. "Radio"
2. "FM"
3. Open "Options".
4. "RDS"

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

HD RADIO™ RECEPTION*

Many radio stations transmit analog and digital signals. If a digital radio network is available, these stations can be received digitally and thus with improved sound quality.

License conditions

HD Radio™ technology is manufactured under U.S. and Foreign Patents licensed from iBiquity Digital Corp. HD Radio™ and the HD and HD Radio logos are proprietary trademarks of iBiquity Digital Corp.

Activating/deactivating digital radio reception

1. "Radio"
2. "FM" or "AM"
3. Open "Options".
4. "HD Radio Reception"

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

HD This symbol is displayed when a station is being received digitally.

In areas in which the station is not continuously received in digital mode, playback switches between analog and digital reception. Any time shift between these two broadcasts can lead to repetitions or interruptions in the output. In this case, switch off digital radio reception.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

Displaying additional information

Some stations broadcast additional information on the current track, such as the name of the artist.

1. Select the desired station.
2. Open "Options".
3. "Station info"

Selecting a substation

The ⧉ symbol indicates that a main station also broadcasts additional substations. The station name of the main station ends in HD1. The station names of the substations end in HD2, HD3, etc.

1. Select the desired station.
2. Press the MINI joystick.
3. Select the substation.

When reception is poor, the substation is muted for several seconds. If reception is interrupted for an extended period, the radio switches back to the main station.

STORED STATIONS

It is possible to store up to 40 stations.

Selecting a station

1. "Radio"
2. "Presets"
3. Select the desired station.

Storing a station

The station currently selected is stored.

1. "Radio"
2. "Presets"
3. "Store station"

4. Select the desired memory location.

The list of stored stations is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Deleting a station

1. "Radio"
2. "Presets"
3. Select the desired station.
4. Open "Options".
5. "Delete entry"

SATELLITE RADIO*

General information

The channels are offered in fixed packages. Packages must be activated by telephone.

Navigation bar

Symbol	Function
	Changing list view
	Selecting category
	Entering channel directly
	Time shift

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

Symbol	Function
☆* ☆	Accessing favorites, selecting the My Favorites category
☆+	Managing favorites
↶	Traffic Jump

Managing subscription

Clear reception is required for activating and deactivating channels. Reception is best when you have an unobstructed view to the sky. The channel name is displayed in the status line.

Activating channels

The category Unsubscribed Channels includes all channels that are not activated.

1. "Radio"
2. "Satellite radio"
3. "Category"

4. Select the category Unsubscribed Channels.
5. Select desired channel.
   The telephone number and electronic serial number, ESN, are displayed.
6. Dial the telephone number to have the channels activated.

This telephone number can also be used to deactivate the channels.

Deactivating channels

1. "Radio"
2. "Satellite radio"
3. Open "Options".
4. "Manage subscription"

The telephone number and electronic serial number, ESN, are displayed.

5. Call Sirius to deactivate the channels.

Selecting channels

You can only listen to activated channels.

The selected channel is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Using the on-board computer

1. "Radio"
2. "Satellite radio"
3. Select "All channels" or the desired category.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

4. Select desired channel.

Using the buttons near the CD player

Press the button for the corresponding direction.
The next channel is selected.

Using direct channel entry

1. "Radio"
2. "Satellite radio"
3. "Set channel"
4. Turn the MINI joystick until you reach the desired channel and then press the MINI joystick.

Storing channel

1. "Radio"
2. "Satellite radio"
3. Select "All channels" or a desired category.
4. Select desired channel.
5. Press again.
6. Press the MINI joystick again to confirm the highlighted channel.

7. Select the desired memory location.

The channels are stored for the remote control currently in use.

Changing list view

The list view changes each time the first symbol on the navigation bar is pressed.

Information about the channel is displayed.

Symbol	Function
	Channel name
	Artist
	Track

Selecting category

1. "Radio"
2. "Satellite radio"
3. "Category"
4. Select the desired category.

Time shift

Approximately one hour of the channel currently being listened to is temporarily stored in a cache memory. Prerequisite: the signal must be available.

The stored audio track can be played back at a different time from the live broadcast. If the cache memory is full, then the older tracks are recorded over. The cache memory is deleted if a new channel is selected.

Accessing Time shift

1. "Radio"
2. "Satellite radio"

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

3. "Replay - Time shift"

- The red arrow indicates the current playback position.
- The time difference from the live broadcast is displayed next to the cache memory bar.
- For live transmissions: "live".

Time shift menu

Symbol	Function
	Go to live broadcast
▷ ❙❙	Playback/pause
▷❙	Next track
❙◁	Previous track
▷▷	Fast forward
◁◁	Reverse
	Automatic time shift deactivated/activated

Automatic time shift

When the function is activated, audio playback is stopped automatically in the event of:

- Incoming and outgoing telephone calls.
- Activation of the voice activation system.
- Muting.

The audio playback then continues with a time delay.

Activating

1. "Radio"
2. "Satellite radio"
3. "Replay - Time shift"
4. "Automatic time shift"

Deactivating

"Automatic time shift"

Storing favorites

Up to 30 favorites can be stored in the favorites list. Possible favorites include artist, track, game, league, and team.

Storing artist, track, or game

Only current broadcasts can be stored as favorites. The channel information must be available.

1. "Radio"
2. "Satellite radio"
3. Select "All channels" or the desired category.
4. Select desired channel.
5. Press the MINI joystick again.
6. Select artist, track, or game.

Storing league or team

Leagues or teams can be added to the favorites from a selection list.

1. "Radio"
2. "Satellite radio"
3. "Manage favorites"
4. "Add sports information"

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

5. Select the desired league.
6. Select "Add all teams" or a desired team.

Accessing favorites

If an activated favorite is being played, the message "Favorite alert!" appears for approx. 20 seconds.

Select "Favorites" while the alert message is being displayed.

The displayed favorite will be played.

If it receives no notification, the system switches into the My Favorites category. All of the favorites currently being broadcast can be selected from a list.

Managing favorites

Activating/deactivating favorites

Favorites can be activated or deactivated globally and individually.

1. "Satellite radio"
2. "Manage favorites"
3. Select "Activate alert" or desired favorites.

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Deleting favorites

1. "Satellite radio"
2. "Manage favorites"
3. Highlight the favorites you wish to delete.
4. Open "Options".
5. "Delete entry"

Traffic Jump

Traffic and weather information for a selected region are broadcast at intervals of a few minutes.

Selecting region

1. "Radio"
2. "Satellite radio"
3. Open "Options".
4. "Set jump"
5. Select the desired region.

The region is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Activating/deactivating Jump

1. "Radio"
2. "Satellite radio"
3. "Jump to:"

As soon as information about the selected region becomes available, it is broadcast.

A new panel appears in the display.

Cancel Traffic Jump: "Cancel".

Symbol	Meaning
	Information will be broadcast soon.
	Information is currently being broadcast.

Select one of the symbols to deactivate Traffic Jump.

Automatic update

About twice a year, Sirius carries out an update of the names and positions of the channels. The update occurs automatically and can take several minutes.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

Notes

- ▷ Under some circumstances, reception may not be possible, e.g. under certain environmental or topographical conditions. The satellite radio has no influence on this.
- ▷ The signal may not be available in tunnels or underground garages or near trees, mountains, or other powerful sources of radio interference.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

CD PLAYER*

GENERAL INFORMATION

Inserting CD

Insert the CD into the drive with the labeled side up. Die CD is automatically pulled in.
Playback starts automatically if the sound output is on. For CDs with compressed audio files, it can take several minutes to the data, depending on the folder structure.

Playable formats

CD player*

- ▷ CD: CD-ROM, CD-R, CD-RW, CD-DA
- ▷ Compressed audio files: MP3, WMA, AAC

Ejecting CD

Press the button on the CD player.
The CD will be slid a short distance out from the drive.

AUDIO PLAYBACK

Selecting the track using the button

Press the button for the corresponding direction repeatedly until you reach the desired track.

Selecting the track using the on-board computer

Audio CDs

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "CD"
3. Select the desired track. Press the MINI joystick to start playback.

CDs with compressed audio files*

Depending on the data, it is possible that not all indications on the CD will be correctly displayed.

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "CD"
3. Select the directory, if necessary.
   To change to a higher level directory: move the MINI joystick to the left.

4. Select a track and press the MINI joystick.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

Displaying information about the track*

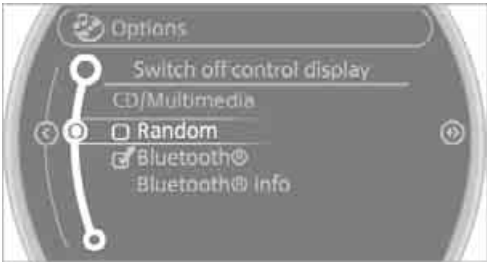
If information about a track has been stored, it is displayed automatically:

- Artist
- Album title
- Number of tracks on the CD
- Track file name

Random play sequence

The tracks on the current CD are played once each in random order.

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "CD"
3. Select the desired CD.
4. Open "Options".
5. "Random"



CDs with compressed audio files:
The directories and the tracks contained therein are played back in random sequence.

Switch off random play sequence: press the MINI joystick.

Fast forward/reverse

Press and hold the button for the corresponding direction.

Automatic replay*

Selected tracks, folders, or CDs are automatically repeated.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

EXTERNAL DEVICES

OVERVIEW

Symbol	Meaning
	USB audio interface*
	Mobile phone audio interface*
	Bluetooth audio*
	AUX-IN connection

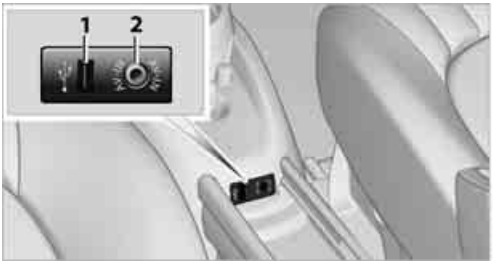
AUX-IN CONNECTION

Overview

▷ It is possible to connect audio devices, e.g. MP3 players. Sound is output over the vehicle speakers.

▷ Recommended settings: mid-level tone and volume settings on the audio device. Tone may depend on the quality of the audio files.

Connecting



1 USB interface

2 Connection for audio playback: TRS connector 1/8"/3.5 mm

For audio playback over the vehicle speakers, connect the headphones or line-out connection of the device to the AUX N connection **2**.

Starting audio playback

The audio device must be switched on.

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. or "External devices" if applicable

3. "AUX front"

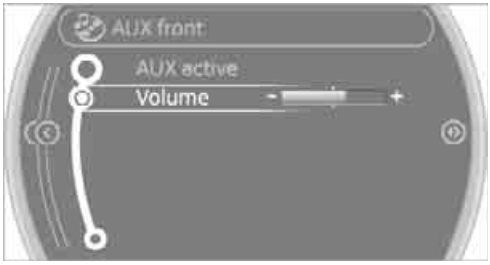
Sound is output on the vehicle loudspeakers.

Volume

The volume of the sound output depends on the audio device. If this volume differs markedly from the volume of the other audio sources, it is advisable to adjust the volumes.

Adjusting volume

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. or "External devices" if applicable
3. "AUX front"
4. "Volume"



5. Turn MINI joystick until the desired volume is set and then press the MINI joystick.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

USB AUDIO INTERFACE*/ MOBILE PHONE AUDIO INTERFACE*

Overview

It is possible to connect external audio devices. They are operated using the on-board computer. Sound is output over the vehicle speakers.

Options for connecting external devices

- ▷ Connection via USB audio interface: Apple devices, USB devices such as MP3 players, USB memory sticks, or mobile phones that are supported by the USB audio interface.
- ▷ Connection via the snap-in adapter*, when equipped with extended connectivity of the music player in the mobile phone: Apple iPhone or mobile phones. Playback is only possible if no plug is present in the USB audio interface.

Because of the large number of audio devices available on the market, an operation via the vehicle cannot be guaranteed for every audio device/mobile phone.
Ask your MINI dealer for suitable audio devices/ mobile phones.

Audio files

Playback of standard audio files is possible:

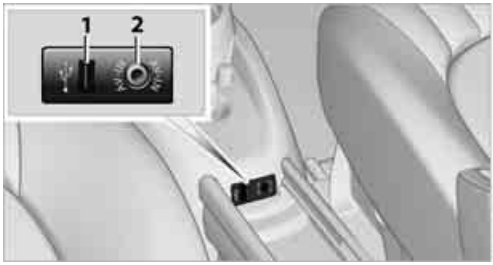
- ▷ MP3
- ▷ WMA
- ▷ WAV (PCM)
- ▷ AAC*, M4A*
- ▷ Without voice activation system: playback lists: M3U
- ▷ With voice activation system: playback lists: M3U, WPL*, PLS*

Video files*

Playback of standard video files with a compatible Apple device is possible:

- ▷ MPEG4
- ▷ H.264

Connect via the USB audio interface



1 USB interface

2 Connection for audio/video playback: TRS connector 1/8"/3.5 mm

Apple device

A special adapter cable* is available for connecting the Apple device. The adapter cable is required for a proper connection.
Further information:

- ▷ at: www.mini.com/connectivity
- ▷ at your MINI dealer.

For audio playback over the vehicle speakers, connect the Apple device using the special adapter cable with AV-IN connection **2** and USB interface **1** or using a flexible adapter cable* with a USB interface **1**.

The USB audio interface supports the menu structure of the Apple device.

USB device

To protect the USB interface and USB device from mechanical damage, connect them with a flexible adapter cable.

Connect the USB device to the USB interface **1**.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

After initial connection

Track information, e.g. artist or music style and the playlists of the USB device are imported into the vehicle. This process can take some time. The time required is dependent on the USB device and on the number of tracks.

During transmission, the tracks can be accessed via the file directory.

Number of tracks

The data from up to four USB devices or for approx. 26,000 tracks can be stored in the vehicle. If a fifth device is connected or if more than 26,000 tracks are stored, then the data of existing tracks may be deleted.

Copy protection

Music tracks with integrated Digital Rights Management (DRM) cannot be played.

Audio playback

Starting audio playback

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "External devices"
3. Select the ⚲ or symbol and press the MINI joystick.

Playback begins with the first track.

Track search

Selection is possible via:

- ▷ Playback lists
- ▷ Information: music style, artist, album, track.
- ▷ Additionally for USB devices: file directory, composer.

Track titles are displayed if they have been stored in the Latin alphabet.

Starting the track search

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "External devices"
3. Select the ⚲ or symbol.

4. Select desired category, e.g. "Genre", Artist".

   All entries are displayed in a list.

   - ▷ Open "A-Z search" and enter the desired input. When a letter is entered, the results are filtered using this letter as the first letter. If multiple letters are entered, all results that contain that sequence are displayed.
   - ▷ Select the desired entry from the list.

5. Select additional categories if desired.

   Not all categories need to be selected. For example, if all of the tracks by a certain artist are to be displayed, call up that artist only. All of the tracks by that artist are then displayed.

6. "Play"

Restarting a track search

"New search"

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

Playback lists

To open playback lists.

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "External devices"
3. Select the ⚲ or symbol.
4. "Playlists"

Current playback

List of tracks currently being played.

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "External devices"
3. Select the ⚲ or symbol.
4. "Current playback"

Random play sequence

The current list of tracks is played in random sequence.

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "External devices"
3. Open "Options".
4. "Random"

Fast forward/reverse

Buttons on the steering wheel or CD player:

Press and hold the ◀ ▶ button for the corresponding direction.

Video playback*

The video image on the on-board monitor is displayed when the vehicle is standing still; in some countries only when the hand brake is engaged or if the transmission is set on P.

For video playback, connect the Apple device to the USB audio interface using the video-enabled adapter cable*.

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "External devices"
3. Select the ⚲ symbol and press the MINI joystick.
4. "Video"

5. Selecting the desired file.

   Select category in file directory, if applicable.

6. Press the MINI joystick.

   The playback of the selected video file is started.

Notes

⚠ Do not subject the audio device to extreme environmental conditions, e.g. extremely high temperatures, refer to the operating instructions for the audio device. Otherwise the audio device may be damaged, impairing driving safety while driving.◀

Depending on the configuration of the audio files, e.g. bit rates greater than 256 Kbit/s, proper playback cannot always be ensured.

Information on connection

▷ The connected audio device is supplied with a max. power of 500 mA if supported by the device. Therefore, do not connect the device to the power socket in the vehicle.

▷ Do not use force when plugging the connector into the USB interface.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

- ▷ Do not connect any devices, e.g. fans or lamps, to the USB audio interface.
- ▷ Do not connect USB hard drives.
- ▷ Do not use the USB audio interface to recharge external devices.

BLUETOOTH AUDIO*

Overview

- ▷ It is possible to use Bluetooth to play music files from external devices, e.g. audio devices or mobile phones.
- ▷ Bluetooth® is a registered trademark of Bluetooth® SIG, Inc.
- ▷ Sound is output over the vehicle speakers.
- ▷ The volume of the sound output depends on the device. If necessary, change the volume setting on the device.
- ▷ Up to four external devices can be paired with the vehicle.

Requirements

- ▷ Suitable device. Information is available at www.mini.com/connectivity.
- ▷ Device operational.
- ▷ Ignition switched on.
- ▷ Bluetooth activated in vehicle, refer to page 164, and in the device.
- ▷ Bluetooth presets in the device are required, e.g. connection not confirmed or visible, refer to Owner's Manual for the device.
- ▷ A number with at least 4 and at most 16 digits has been established as the Bluetooth passkey. Only required once for pairing.

Pairing and connecting

⚠ Only pair the device when the vehicle is stopped; otherwise, inattention may lead to endangerment of passengers or other road users.◀

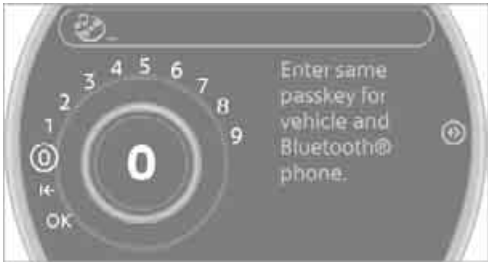
1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "Bluetooth® (audio)"
3. or "Bluetooth® audio" if applicable
4. "Add new phone"

   The Bluetooth name of the vehicle is displayed.

5. To perform other operations on the device, refer to the operating instructions for the device: e.g. search for and connect Bluetooth device or a new device.

   The Bluetooth name of the vehicle appears on the device's display.
6. Select the Bluetooth name of the vehicle on the device's display.

   The on-board computer or the device will prompt you to enter the same Bluetooth passkey.
7. Enter the passkey and confirm.



8. Select desired functions with which the device is to be connected, e.g. "Audio".
9. "OK"

If the pairing was successful, the device is displayed as connected.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

♫ symbol displayed in white: device is active as an audio source.

If the pairing was not successful: what to do if…, refer to page 148.

Connecting a particular device

A device that has already been paired can be connected as an active audio source.

Connection is not possible if a data exchange is currently taking place via a mobile phone that is connected via Bluetooth.

Prerequisite

If necessary, activate the audio connection of the desired device from the list of paired devices.

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "Bluetooth® (audio)"
3. or "Bluetooth® audio" if applicable
4. Select the desired device from the list of paired devices.
5. Open "Options".
6. "Configure phone"
7. Activate "Audio".
8. "OK"

Connecting a device

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "Bluetooth® (audio)"
3. or "Bluetooth® audio" if applicable
4. Select the desired device from the list of paired devices.

♫ symbol displayed in white: device is active as an audio source.

Playback

General information

- ▷ The display of track information depends on the device.
- ▷ Operation via the device or the on-board computer are both possible.
- ▷ Playback is interrupted if a data exchange takes place via a mobile phone that is connected via Bluetooth.

Starting playback

1. Connect device.
2. "CD/Multimedia"
3. "External devices"
4. Select the ⓑ symbol.

5. Select the desired track from the list.

Playback menu*

Depending on the device, all functions may not be available.

Symbol	Function
▷|	Next track Fast forward: press and hold the symbol.
|◁	Previous track Reverse: press and hold the symbol.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

Track search*

Depending on the device, it is possible to search by track.

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "External devices"
3. Select the symbol.
4. "Search device content"
5. "A-Z search"
6. Select desired entry or directory.

Player program*

Depending on the device, there may be various programs for playing music files.

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "External devices"
3. Select the symbol.
4. Open "Options".
5. "Select player"
6. Select the desired program.

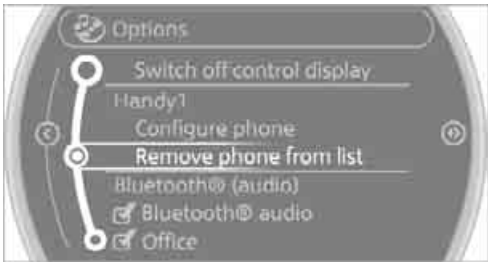
Disconnecting an audio connection

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "Bluetooth® (audio)"
3. Select the desired device from the list of connected devices.
4. Open "Options".
5. "Configure phone"
6. Deactivate "Audio".
7. "OK"

With a mobile phone, only the audio connection is disconnected. All other connections remain active.

Unpairing device

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "Bluetooth® (audio)"
3. or "Bluetooth® audio" if applicable
4. Highlight the device to be unpaired.
5. Open "Options".
6. "Remove phone from list"



What to do if...

Information about suitable devices is available at www.mini.com/connectivity.

Suitable mobile phones, refer to page 163.

▷ Device not supported by vehicle.

If necessary, perform a software update*, refer to page 149.

▷ Device could not be paired or connected.

Do the Bluetooth passkeys on the device and vehicle match? Enter the same passkey on the device and via the on-board computer.

Is the passkey input taking longer than 30 seconds? Repeat the pairing procedure.

Are too many Bluetooth devices connected to the device or to the vehicle? If necessary, delete the connections with other devices.

Is the mobile phone in power economy mode or does it only have a small amount of battery charge remaining? Charge the mobile phone in the snap-in adapter or via a charging cable.

Depending on the mobile phone, it may only be possible to connect one device to the vehicle. Unpair the connected device from the vehicle and only pair and connect one device.

Is the device no longer responding? Switch the device off and back on again.

Repeat the pairing procedure.

▷ No music can be played.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

Start the program for playing music files on the device and if necessary, select a track via the device.

Activate and deactivate the radio mute on the radio control panel.

▷ Music files only play quietly.

Adjust volume settings on the device.

▷ Videos cannot be played or can only be played with a delayed audio output.

Check the device compatibility. Information is available at www.mini.com/connectivity.

▷ Playback is interrupted by the press of a button or other messages on the device.

Switch off key tones and other acoustic signal on the device.

▷ Playback is interrupted by a phone call or traffic report and does not automatically continue.

Activate and deactivate the radio mute on the radio control panel.

▷ Playback is not possible when the mobile phone is connected via Bluetooth audio and at the same time via the extended connectivity of the music player in the mobile phone*.

Disconnect one of the two connections, e.g. the audio connection, refer to page 148, and start playback again.

If you have gone through all items in the list and still cannot activate the desired function please contact the Hotline or your MINI dealer.

SOFTWARE UPDATE*

The vehicle supports various external devices, depending on the software it is currently using. A software update can enable the vehicle to support, for example, new mobile phones or new external devices.

Software updates and associated, up-to-date instructions are available on the web page www.mini.com/connectivity.

Displaying current version

The currently installed software is displayed.

1. "Settings"
2. "Software update"
3. "Show current version"

Select the desired version* to display additional information*.

Updating software

The software update can only be performed when stopped.

1. Save the file for the software update in the main directory of a USB data storage device.
2. Connect the USB data storage device to the USB interface of the USB audio interface in the center console. It is not possible to perform the update using the USB interface in the glove compartment.
3. "Settings"
4. "Software update"
5. "Update software"

6. "Start update"
7. "OK"

All of the listed software updates are installed.

Reinstalling previous version

If necessary, it is possible to restore the system to the software version prior to the last software update.

The restoring to the previous version can only be performed when stopped.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

1. "Settings"
2. "Software update"
3. "Restore previous version"
4. Select "OK" twice.

All of the listed software updates are removed.

Note

MINI Connected*, Office functions, and connected devices may temporarily be unavailable during a software update or while restoring to the previous version. Wait a few minutes until the functions are available once more.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

CONNECT ME.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

AT A GLANCE

CONTROLS

DRIVING TIPS

NAVIGATION

ENTERTAINMENT

COMMUNICATIONS

MOBILITY

REFERENCE

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

HANDS-FREE DEVICE BLUETOOTH*

OVERVIEW

The concept

Mobile phones can be connected to the vehicle through Bluetooth.

Bluetooth® is a registered trademark of Bluetooth® SIG, Inc.

After being paired once, when the ignition is switched on, these devices are automatically detected as soon as they are present in the vehicle and can be controlled via the on-board computer, the buttons on the steering wheel, and by voice*.

Up to four mobile phones can be paired.

It may be necessary for some functions to be activated by the mobile phone provider.

Only make entries when traffic conditions permit. Do not hold the mobile phone in your hand while you are driving; use the hands-free system instead. If you do not observe this precaution, your being distracted can endanger vehicle occupants and other road users.◀

Suitable mobile phones

Precise information as to which mobile phones and hands-free devices are supported can be found at www.mini.com/connectivity.

With a certain software version, these suitable mobile phones support the vehicle functions described below.

With other mobile phones or software versions, malfunctions may occur.

A mobile phone that is connected to the vehicle should not be operated via the mobile phone keypad; otherwise, malfunctions may occur.

Displaying vehicle identification number and software part number

To check which mobile phones are supported by the hands-free device, the vehicle identification number and the software part number will be required. The software version of the mobile phone may also be required.

1. "Telephone"
2. Open "Options".
3. "Bluetooth® info"
4. "Display system information"

PAIRING/UNPAIRING MOBILE PHONE

Requirements

- ▷ Suitable mobile phone, refer to page 154.
- ▷ Mobile phone operational.
- ▷ Bluetooth activated in vehicle, refer to page 154, and in the mobile phone.
- ▷ Bluetooth presets in the mobile phone are required, e.g. connection not confirmed or visible, refer to Owner's Manual for the mobile phone.
- ▷ A number with at least 4 and at most 16 digits has been established as the Bluetooth passkey. Only required once for pairing.
- ▷ Ignition switched on.

Activating/deactivating Bluetooth link

Bluetooth is not permitted everywhere. Comply with all safety guidelines and regulations.

1. "Telephone"
2. Open "Options".

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

3. "Bluetooth®"

Pairing and connecting

Only pair the mobile phone when the vehicle is stopped; otherwise, inattention may lead to endangerment of passengers or other road users.◀

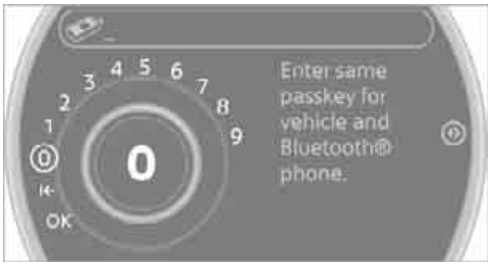
1. "Telephone"
2. "Bluetooth® (phone)"
3. "Add new phone"

   The Bluetooth name of the vehicle is displayed.

4. To perform other operations on the mobile phone, refer to the Owner's Manual for the mobile phone: e.g. search for and connect Bluetooth device or a new device.

   The Bluetooth name of the vehicle appears on the mobile phone display.
5. Select the Bluetooth name of the vehicle on the mobile phone display.

   The on-board computer or the mobile phone will prompt you to enter the same Bluetooth passkey.
6. Enter the passkey and confirm.



7. Select the device options that are to be used for the mobile phone.
8. "OK"

If pairing was successful, the mobile phone appears at the top of the list of mobile phones.

If the pairing was not successful: what to do if…, refer to page 156.

Following the initial pairing

- ▷ The mobile phone is detected/connected in the vehicle within a short period of time when the engine is running or the ignition is switched on.
- ▷ After identification, phone book entries are imported from the mobile phone and/or SIM card* of the telephone, depending on the telephone.
- ▷ Four mobile phones can be paired.
- ▷ Specific settings may be necessary in some mobile phones, e.g. authorization or a secure connection, refer to the mobile phone operating instructions.

Connecting a particular mobile phone

If more than one mobile phone is detected by the vehicle, the mobile phone at the top of the list is connected. A different mobile phone can be connected by selecting it.

1. "Telephone"
2. "Bluetooth® (phone)"

   All paired mobile phones are listed.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

3. Select the mobile phone to be connected.

Unpairing mobile phone

1. "Telephone"
2. "Bluetooth® (phone)"

   All paired mobile phones are listed.
3. Highlight the mobile phone to be unpaired.
4. Open "Options".
5. "Remove phone from list"

What to do if...

For information on suitable mobile phones, refer to page 154.

The mobile phone could not be paired or connected.

- ▷ Is Bluetooth activated in the vehicle and in the mobile phone? Activate Bluetooth in the vehicle and in the mobile phone.
- ▷ Do the Bluetooth passkeys on the mobile phone and the vehicle match? Enter the same passkey on the mobile phone and via the on-board computer.
- ▷ Is the passkey input taking longer than 30 seconds? Repeat the pairing procedure.
- ▷ Are too many Bluetooth devices connected to the mobile phone? If so, delete the connections with other devices on the mobile phone.
- ▷ Is the mobile phone in power economy mode or does it only have a small amount of battery charge remaining? Charge the mobile phone using a charging cable.
- ▷ Depending on the mobile phone, it may only be possible to connect one device to the vehicle. Unpair the connected device from the vehicle and only pair and connect one device.
- ▷ Is the mobile phone no longer responding? Switch the mobile phone off and back on again. Repeat the pairing procedure.

Phone book entries are not displayed, not all of them are displayed, or they are displayed incompletely.

- ▷ The transfer of phone book entries has not yet completed.
- ▷ It is possible that only the phone book entries of the mobile phone or the SIM card* are transferred.
- ▷ It may not be possible to display phone book entries with special characters.
- ▷ The number of phone book entries to be stored is too high.
- ▷ Is the amount of data for the contact too large, e.g., because of stored information such as addresses? Reduce the number of data entries.

The telephone connection quality is low.

- ▷ Depending on the mobile phone, it is possible to adjust the strength of the Bluetooth signal.

If you have gone through all items in the list and still cannot activate the desired function please contact the Hotline or your MINI dealer.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

OPERATION

Adjusting volume

Turn the knob until the desired volume is reached.

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Incoming call

Receiving calls

If the number of the caller is stored in the phone book and is transmitted by the network, then the name and number of the contact are displayed; otherwise, only the number is displayed.

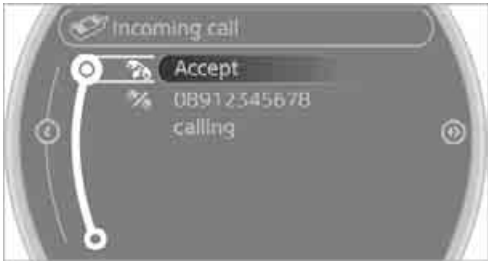
If a contact is assigned more than one phone number, then only the name of the caller is transmitted.

Accepting a call

Press the button on the steering wheel

or

"Accept"



Callrejecting

"Reject"

The caller is redirected to the mailbox if it has been activated.

Ending a call

Press the button on the steering wheel

or

1. "Telephone"
2. "Active calls"
3. "End call"

Entering phone numbers

Dialing a number

1. "Telephone"
2. "Dial number"
3. Select the digits individually.
4. Select the symbol.

It is also possible to enter phone numbers by voice.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

Calls with multiple parties

General information

It is possible to switch between two calls and to connect two calls to form a conference call. These functions must be supported by the mobile phone and by the service provider.

Accepting a call while speaking to another party

This function may have to be activated by the service provider and the mobile phone may need to be adjusted for this.

When a second call comes in during an ongoing call, a call-waiting signal sounds.

"Accept"

The call is accepted and the existing call is put on hold.

Establishing a second call

Establish another call during an active call.

1. "Telephone"
2. "Active calls"
3. "Hold"

   The existing call is put on hold.

4. Dial the new phone number or select it from a list.

"Return"
The conversion that was on hold is continued.

Switching between two calls, toggling

Active call: highlighted.

The call on hold is identified with: "on hold...".

Select the symbol to switch to the call on hold

Establishing a conference call

Two calls can be connected to a single telephone conference call.

1. Establish two calls.
2. "Conference call"

Both calls are always ended when a conference call is terminated. If one call is terminated by another party, the other call can be continued.

Muting the microphone*

The microphone can be muted in active calls.

1. "Telephone"
2. "Active calls"
3. "Microphone mute"

The muted microphone is automatically activated:

▷ If a new call is made.

▷ When switching between callers on hold.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

Keypad dialing

Use keypad dialing to gain access to network services or to control devices, e.g. to remotely access an answering machine. This requires the DTMF code.

1. "Telephone"
2. Select contact from a list or "Dial number"
3. "Keypad dialing"

4. Enter the DTMF code via the on-board computer.

During an ongoing conference call, DTMF dialing is not possible.

Phone book

Displays

The phone book accesses the contacts of the telephone and shows all contacts for which a phone number is entered. The entries can be selected to make a call.

1. "Telephone"
2. "Phone book"

A symbol indicates the storage location of the contacts, refer to page 161.

Calling a contact

1. Select the desired contact.

   Select the symbol. Contact with one phone number. The connection is established.
2. Select the symbol. Contact with more than one phone number. Select phone number, the connection is established.

Call not possible, the mobile phone has no reception or network.

Editing a contact

Changing entries in the "Contacts" menu. If a contact is changed, the changes are not stored in the mobile phone. A copy of the entry is stored in the vehicle.

1. Highlight the contact.
2. Open "Options".
3. "Edit entry"

The contact can be edited.

To redial

General information

The list of dialed numbers in the telephone are transferred to the vehicle, depending on the mobile phone. The last 20 phone numbers dialed are displayed. The sorting of the phone numbers depends on the mobile phone.

Selecting the number using the on-board computer

1. "Telephone"
2. "Redial"

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

3. Select the desired entry and phone number, if necessary.

The connection is established.

Deleting a single entry or all entries*

1. Highlight the entry.
2. Open "Options".
3. "Delete entry" or "Delete list".

Saving an entry in the contacts

1. Highlight the entry.
2. Open "Options".
3. "Store as new contact" or "Add to existing contact".
4. Select the type of number: "Home", "Business", "Mobile" or "Other".
5. Complete the entries if necessary.
6. "Store contact" if necessary

Received calls

Displaying calls

The list of received calls in the telephone is transferred into the vehicle, depending on the mobile phone. The last 20 calls received are displayed. The sorting and displaying of phone numbers depends on the mobile phone.

1. "Telephone"
2. "Received calls"

Calling a number from the list

Select an entry.
The connection is established.

Deleting a single entry or all entries*

1. Highlight the entry.
2. Open "Options".
3. "Delete entry" or "Delete list".

Saving an entry in the contacts

1. Highlight the entry.
2. Open "Options".
3. "Store as new contact" or "Add to existing contact".
4. Select the type of number: "Home", "Business", "Mobile" or "Other".
5. Complete the entries if necessary.
6. "Store contact" if necessary

Messages*

General information

The displaying of text messages depends on whether the mobile phone supports transmission to the vehicle. Text messages may not be supported by the service provider or the function may have to be separately activated. After a mobile phone is paired for the first time, the transmission may take several minutes. Messages are only displayed completely when the vehicle is stopped.

Displaying messages

1. "Telephone"
2. "Messages"
3. Select the desired message.

Hands-free system

General information

Calls being conducted using the hands-free system can be continued using the mobile phone and vice versa.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

From the mobile phone to the hands-free system

Calls that have been initiated from outside the Bluetooth range of the vehicle can be continued using the hands-free system if the ignition is switched on.

Depending on the mobile phone, the call is automatically switched to hands-free mode.

If the switch does not occur automatically, then follow the instructions that appear on the display of the mobile phone, also refer to the Owner's Manual for the mobile phone.

From hands-free system to mobile phone

Calls being conducted using the hands-free system can also be continued using the mobile phone if so desired, depending on the mobile phone.

At this point, follow the instructions that appear on the display of the mobile phone, also refer to the Owner's Manual for the mobile phone.

CONTACTS*

General information

Contacts can be created and edited. The addresses can be used as destinations for navigation.

New contact

1. "Contacts"
2. "New contact"

3. If input boxes are already filled with previous entries: "Delete input fields"
4. To fill in the entry fields: select the symbol next to the entry field.

5. Inputting text, refer to page 20.

   When equipped with a navigation system: enter address. It is only possible to enter addresses that are contained in the navigation data stored in the vehicle. This ensures that route guidance is possible for all addresses.
6. "Store" if necessary
7. "Store contact in vehicle"

Defining a home address

It is possible to store a home address. It is listed at the beginning of the contacts.

1. "Home"
2. Create a contact.
3. "Store contact in vehicle"

My contacts

General information

Listing all contacts from the vehicle.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

Displaying contacts

1. "Contacts"
2. "My contacts"

All contacts are listed in alphabetical order. Depending on the number of contacts, an A-Z search is offered.

A symbol indicates the storage location of the contacts:

Symbol	Storage location
No symbol	In the vehicle; the address has not been checked as a destination.
	In the vehicle; the address has been checked as a destination*.
	Mobile phone*

Editing a contact

1. Select the desired contact.
2. "Edit contact"

3. Change the entry.
4. Move the MINI joystick to the left.
5. "Yes"

If a contact that comes from a mobile phone is changed, the changes are not stored in the mobile phone. A copy of the entry is stored in the vehicle, and only this copy is displayed. Under certain conditions, an identical contact entry is generated.

Selecting a contact as a destination*

1. Select the desired contact.
2. Select address.
3. "Start guidance" or "Add as another destination"

Checking the address as a destination*

An address that is to be used in route guidance must correspond to the navigation data stored in the vehicle. The address can be checked to ensure this.

1. Select the desired contact and highlight the address.
2. Open "Options".
3. "Check as destination"
4. Correct and store the address, if necessary.

Selecting name sorting*

Names can be displayed in different orders.

1. "My contacts"
2. Open "Options".
3. "Display: last, first name" or "Display: first, last name"

Deleting contacts

1. "My contacts"
2. Highlight the contact.
3. Open "Options".
4. "Delete contact" or "Delete all contacts".

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

MOBILE PHONE PREPARATION BLUETOOTH*

OVERVIEW

The concept

Mobile phones or other external devices, e.g. audio players, can be connected to the vehicle via Bluetooth.

Bluetooth® is a registered trademark of Bluetooth® SIG, Inc.

After being paired once, when the ignition is switched on, these devices are automatically detected as soon as they are present in the vehicle and can be controlled via the on-board computer, the buttons on the steering wheel, and by voice*.

Depending on whether they are functioning as a telephone and/or as an audio source, external devices can be used via the vehicle. The telephone functions will be described below. Operation of audio functions, refer to page 146.

It may be necessary for some functions to be activated by the mobile phone provider.

Only make entries when traffic conditions permit. Do not hold the mobile phone in your hand while you are driving; use the hands-free system instead. If you do not observe this precaution, your being distracted can endanger vehicle occupants and other road users.◀

Snap-in adapter*

The snap-in adapter, refer to page 174, makes it possible to:

- ▷ Accommodate the mobile phone.
- ▷ Recharge its battery.
- ▷ Connect it to an external antenna of the vehicle.

  This assures a better network connection and constant sound quality.

A mobile phone that is connected to the vehicle should not be operated via the mobile phone keypad; otherwise, malfunctions may occur.

Suitable mobile phones

For precise information as to which mobile phones and external devices with Bluetooth interfaces are supported by the mobile phone preparation, go to www.mini.com/connectivity.

With a certain software version, these suitable mobile phones support the vehicle functions described below.

With other mobile phones or software versions, malfunctions may occur.

It is possible to perform a software update*, refer to page 149.

Displaying vehicle identification number and software part number

Checking which mobile phones are supported by the mobile phone preparation requires the vehicle identification number and software part number. The software version of the mobile phone may also be required.

1. "Telephone"
2. Open "Options".
3. "Bluetooth® info"
4. "Display system information"

PAIRING/UNPAIRING MOBILE PHONE

Overview

- ▷ Using a mobile phone as a telephone.
- ▷ Using a mobile phone as an auxiliary phone*.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

- ▷ Using a mobile phone as an audio source*.
- ▷ Using an audio device as an audio source, refer to page 146.

Functions supported by the mobile phone and audio device are displayed as symbols during the pairing.

White symbol: function active.

Gray symbol: function inactive.

Symbol	Function
	Telephone
	Auxiliary phone*
	Audio source*

Up to four external devices can be paired. Two devices can be connected to the vehicle at a time and used for different functions. The phone can be used to perform all of the following phone functions.

Requirements

- ▷ Suitable mobile phone, refer to page 163.
- ▷ Mobile phone operational.
- ▷ Bluetooth activated in vehicle, refer to page 164, and in the mobile phone.
- ▷ Bluetooth presets in the mobile phone are required, e.g. connection not confirmed or visible, refer to Owner's Manual for the mobile phone.
- ▷ If necessary, deactivate the audio connection, refer to page 164.
- ▷ A number with at least 4 and at most 16 digits has been established as the Bluetooth passkey. Only required once for pairing.
- ▷ Ignition switched on.

Activating/deactivating Bluetooth link

Bluetooth is not permitted everywhere. Comply with all safety guidelines and regulations.

1. "Telephone"
2. Open "Options".
3. "Bluetooth®"

Activating/deactivating* additional functions

To use these functions in the vehicle, activate them before pairing. For information on suitable mobile phones that support this function, refer to page 163.

1. "Telephone"
2. "Bluetooth® (phone)"
3. Open "Options".

Bluetooth audio

Use a mobile phone as a telephone and as an audio device in the vehicle.

"Bluetooth® audio"

To use a mobile phone exclusively as a telephone in the vehicle, deactivate the function and reconnect the mobile phone.

Office

Contacts, appointments, tasks, notes, text messages, and emails are imported from the mobile phone into the vehicle.

"Office"

Auxiliary phone*

Incoming calls to the auxiliary phone can be accepted, refer to page 168. Missed calls to the auxiliary phone can be shown in the Control Display.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

Another mobile phone can be used as an auxiliary phone.

"Additional telephone"

Pairing and connecting

Only pair the mobile phone when the vehicle is stopped; otherwise, inattention may lead to endangerment of passengers or other road users.◀

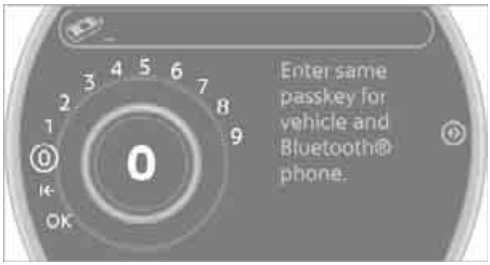
1. "Telephone"
2. "Bluetooth® (phone)"
3. "Add new phone"

   The Bluetooth name of the vehicle is displayed.

4. To perform other operations on the mobile phone, refer to the Owner's Manual for the mobile phone: e.g. search for and connect Bluetooth device or a new device.

   The Bluetooth name of the vehicle appears on the mobile phone display.
5. Select the Bluetooth name of the vehicle on the mobile phone display.

   The on-board computer or the mobile phone will prompt you to enter the same Bluetooth passkey.
6. Enter the passkey and confirm.



7. Select the device options that are to be used for the mobile phone.

8. "OK"

If pairing was successful, the mobile phone appears at the top of the list of mobile phones.

If the pairing was not successful: what to do if…, refer to page 167.

Following the initial pairing

- ▷ The mobile phone is detected/connected in the vehicle within a short period of time when the engine is running or radio readiness is switched on.
- ▷ After identification, phone book entries are imported from the mobile phone and/or SIM card* of the telephone, depending on the telephone.
- ▷ Specific settings may be necessary in some mobile phones, e.g. authorization or a secure connection, refer to the mobile phone operating instructions.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

Connecting a particular mobile phone

If more than one mobile phone is detected by the vehicle, the mobile phone at the top of the list is connected. A different mobile phone can be connected by selecting it.

1. "Telephone"
2. "Bluetooth® (phone)"

   All paired mobile phones are listed.
3. Select the mobile phone to be connected.

The assigned functions before the unpairing of the mobile phone are assigned to the mobile phone when it is reconnected. If a mobile phone is already connected, then these functions are deactivated if necessary.

Device options*

Device options in devices that are paired and connected can be activated or deactivated.

Configuring device

1. "Telephone"
2. "Bluetooth® (phone)"
3. Highlight the device to be configured.
4. Open "Options".
5. "Configure phone"

6. Activate/deactivate functions. At least one function must be selected.
   - ▷ "Telephone"
   - ▷ "Additional telephone"
   - ▷ "Audio"
7. "OK"

If a device is assigned a function, this may deactivate the function in an already connected device and cause the other device to be unpaired.

Exchanging the telephone and auxiliary phone

If the telephone and auxiliary phone are connected to the vehicle, the function can be swapped between the two devices.

1. "Telephone"
2. "Bluetooth® (phone)"
3. "Swap phone/addit. phone"

Using the mobile phone as an audio source

Using the audio-capable mobile phone as an audio source. Activate Bluetooth audio, refer to page 164.

Activating and connecting mobile phone in vehicle, refer to page 165.

The mobile phone is used as an audio source if no other device is connected as an audio source.

If a device is already connected as an audio source:

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

1. Activating and connecting mobile phone in vehicle, refer to page 165.
2. "Use for audio"

   The mobile phone is connected as an audio source. The previous audio source is no longer connected to the vehicle.

Unpairing device

1. "Telephone"
2. "Bluetooth® (phone)"

   All paired mobile phones are listed.
3. Highlight the device to be unpaired.
4. Open "Options".
5. "Remove phone from list"

What to do if...

For information on suitable mobile phones, refer to page 163.

The mobile phone could not be paired or connected.

- ▷ Is Bluetooth activated in the vehicle and in the mobile phone? Activate Bluetooth in the vehicle and in the mobile phone.
- ▷ Do the Bluetooth passkeys on the mobile phone and the vehicle match? Enter the same passkey on the mobile phone and via the on-board computer.
- ▷ Is the passkey input taking longer than 30 seconds? Repeat the pairing procedure.
- ▷ Are too many Bluetooth devices connected to the mobile phone? If so, delete the connections with other devices on the mobile phone.
- ▷ Is the audio connection activated? Deactivate the audio connection.
- ▷ Is the mobile phone in power economy mode or does it only have a small amount of battery charge remaining? Charge the mobile phone in the snap-in adapter* or via a charging cable.
- ▷ Depending on the mobile phone, it may only be possible to connect one device to the vehicle. Unpair the connected device from the vehicle and only pair and connect one device.
- ▷ Is the mobile phone no longer responding? Switch the mobile phone off and back on again. Repeat the pairing procedure.
- ▷ Telephone functions not possible.
- ▷ Is the mobile phone paired as an auxiliary phone and is the auxiliary phone function deactivated? Activate the function.
- ▷ Outgoing call not possible? Connect the mobile phone as a telephone.

Phone book entries are not displayed, not all of them are displayed, or they are displayed incompletely.

- ▷ The transfer of phone book entries has not yet completed.
- ▷ It is possible that only the phone book entries of the mobile phone or the SIM card* are transferred.
- ▷ It may not be possible to display phone book entries with special characters.
- ▷ The number of phone book entries to be stored is too high.
- ▷ The data volume of the phone book entry is too great, e.g. due to additionally stored information such as notes? Reduce the data volume.
- ▷ Is the mobile phone connected as an audio source or auxiliary phone? The mobile phone must be connected as a telephone.

The telephone connection quality is low.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

▷ Depending on the mobile phone, it is possible to adjust the strength of the Bluetooth signal.

▷ Insert the mobile phone into the snap-in adapter* or place it in the vicinity of the center console.

▷ Adjust the volume of the microphone and speaker separately.

If you have gone through all items in the list and still cannot activate the desired function please contact the Hotline or your MINI dealer.

OPERATION

Adjusting volume

Turn the knob until the desired volume is reached.

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

The vehicle automatically adjusts the volume of the microphone on the mobile phone and the volume of the person on the phone with you. Depending on the mobile phone, it may be necessary to adjust the volumes.

Adjustments are only possible during a call and must be carried out separately for each phone. When the telephone is unpaired, this deletes the settings.

1. "Settings"
2. "Tone"
3. "Volume settings"
4. To select the desired setting: "Microphone" or "Loudspeak."
5. To adjust: turn the MINI joystick.
6. To store: press the MINI joystick.

Incoming call

Receiving calls

If the number of the caller is stored in the phone book and is transmitted by the network, then the name and number of the contact are displayed; otherwise, only the number is displayed.

If a contact is assigned more than one phone number, then only the name of the caller is transmitted.

With calls to the auxiliary phone, only the number is displayed if it is transmitted by the network.

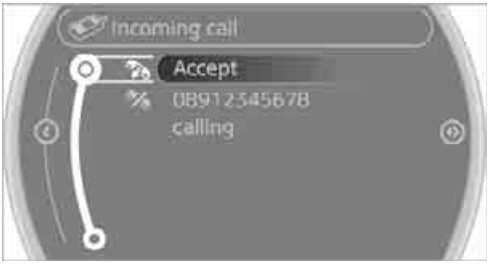
An incoming call to the auxiliary phone is automatically rejected if a call with the phone is currently active.

Accepting a call

Press the button on the steering wheel

or

"Accept"



Rejecting a call

"Reject"

The caller is redirected to the mailbox if it has been activated.

Ending a call

Press the button on the steering wheel

or

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

1. "Telephone"
2. "Active calls"
3. "End call"

Entering phone numbers

Dialing a number

1. "Telephone"
2. "Dial number"
3. Select the digits individually.
4. Select the symbol.

It is also possible to enter phone numbers by voice.

Calls with multiple parties

General information

It is possible to switch between two calls and to connect two calls to form a conference call. These functions must be supported by the mobile phone and by the service provider.

Accepting a call while speaking to another party

This function may have to be activated by the service provider and the mobile phone may need to be adjusted for this.

When a second call comes in during an ongoing call, a call-waiting signal sounds.

"Accept"

The call is accepted and the existing call is put on hold.

Establishing a second call

Establish another call during an active call.

1. "Telephone"
2. "Active calls"
3. "Hold"

   The existing call is put on hold.

4. Dial the new phone number or select it from a list.

Switching between two calls, toggling

Active call: highlighted.

The call on hold is identified with: "on hold...".

Select the symbol to switch to the call on hold

Establishing a conference call

Two calls can be connected to a single telephone conference call.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

1. Establish two calls.
2. "Conference call"

Both calls are always ended when a conference call is terminated. If one call is terminated by another party, the other call can be continued.

Muting the microphone*

The microphone can be muted in active calls.

1. "Telephone"
2. "Active calls"
3. "Microphone mute"

The muted microphone is automatically activated:

▷ If a new call is made.

▷ When switching between callers on hold.

Keypad dialing

Use keypad dialing to gain access to network services or to control devices, e.g. to remotely access an answering machine. This requires the DTMF code.

1. "Telephone"
2. Select contact from a list or "Dial number"
3. "Keypad dialing"

4. Enter the DTMF code via the on-board computer.

Phone book

Displays

The phone book accesses the contacts of the telephone and shows all contacts for which a phone number is entered. The entries can be selected to make a call.

1. "Telephone"
2. "Phone book"

A symbol indicates the storage location of the contacts, refer to page 176.

Calling a contact

1. Select the desired contact.

   Select the symbol. Contact with one phone number. The connection is established.
2. Select the symbol. Contact with more than one phone number. Select phone number, the connection is established.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

Call not possible, the mobile phone has no reception or network.

Editing a contact

Changing entries in the "Contacts" menu. If a contact is changed, the changes are not stored in the mobile phone. A copy of the entry is stored in the vehicle.

1. Highlight the contact.
2. Open "Options".
3. "Edit entry"

The contact can be edited.

To redial

General information

The list of dialed numbers in the telephone are transferred to the vehicle, depending on the mobile phone. The last 20 phone numbers dialed are displayed. The sorting of the phone numbers depends on the mobile phone.

Selecting the number using the on-board computer

1. "Telephone"
2. "Redial"

3. Select the desired entry and phone number, if necessary.

The connection is established.

Deleting a single entry or all entries*

1. Highlight the entry.
2. Open "Options".
3. "Delete entry" or "Delete list".

Saving an entry in the contacts

1. Highlight the entry.
2. Open "Options".
3. "Store as new contact" or "Add to existing contact".
4. Select the type of number: "Home", "Business", "Mobile" or "Other".
5. Complete the entries if necessary.
6. "Store contact" if necessary

Received calls

Displaying calls

The list of received calls in the telephone is transferred into the vehicle, depending on the mobile phone. The last 20 calls received are displayed. The sorting and displaying of phone numbers depends on the mobile phone.

1. "Telephone"
2. "Received calls"

Calling a number from the list

Select an entry.
The connection is established.

Deleting a single entry or all entries*

1. Highlight the entry.
2. Open "Options".
3. "Delete entry" or "Delete list".

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

Saving an entry in the contacts

1. Highlight the entry.
2. Open "Options".
3. "Store as new contact" or "Add to existing contact".
4. Select the type of number: "Home", "Business", "Mobile" or "Other".
5. Complete the entries if necessary.
6. "Store contact" if necessary

Hands-free system

General information

Calls being conducted using the hands-free system can be continued using the mobile phone and vice versa.

From the mobile phone to the hands-free system

Calls that have been initiated from outside the Bluetooth range of the vehicle can be continued using the hands-free system if the ignition is switched on.

Depending on the mobile phone, the call is automatically switched to hands-free mode.

If the switch does not occur automatically, then follow the instructions that appear on the display of the mobile phone, also refer to the Owner's Manual for the mobile phone.

From hands-free system to mobile phone

Calls being conducted using the hands-free system can also be continued using the mobile phone if so desired, depending on the mobile phone.

At this point, follow the instructions that appear on the display of the mobile phone, also refer to the Owner's Manual for the mobile phone.

OPERATION BY VOICE*

Equipped with voice activation system: operation, refer to page 21. For the list with the short commands, refer to page 227, does not apply for this type of voice operation.

Without voice activation system: depending upon the equipment, the mobile phone can be voice-operated as described below.

The concept

▷ The mobile phone can be operated without removing your hand from the steering wheel.

▷ In many cases, the entry process is supported by means of announcements or questions.

▷ ›...‹ Verbal instructions to use with the voice activation system.

▷ ››...‹‹ Indicates responses of the voice activation system.

Voice commands

Activating voice activation system

1. Briefly press the button on the steering wheel.
2. Say the command.

Finishing voice input

Press the button on the steering wheel briefly
or

›Cancel‹.

Possible commands

Having possible commands read aloud

Press the button on the steering wheel.

›Help‹.

Possible commands are read aloud.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

Each digit can be spoken individually or combined into a sequence to accelerate the entry process.

Using alternative commands

There are often a number of commands to run a function, e.g.:

›Dial name‹ or ›Name‹.

Example: dialing phone numbers

1. Briefly press the button on the steering wheel.
2. ›Dial number‹
3. The system replies: ››Please say the number‹‹
4. For example: ›123 456 7890‹
5. The system replies: ››123 456 7890. Continue?‹‹
6. ›Dial‹
   The system replies: ››Dialing number‹‹

Calling

Dialing phone numbers

1. ›Dial number‹.
2. Say the phone number.
3. ›Dial‹.

The connection to the desired subscriber is established.

Correcting phone number

Digit sequences can be deleted after the system has repeated the digits.

›Correct number‹.

The command can be repeated as often as necessary.

Deleting phone number

›Delete‹.

All digits entered up to this point are deleted.

Redialing

›Redial‹.

Voice phone book*

Depending on how your vehicle is equipped, it may be necessary to create your own voice phone book.

The entries must be entered by voice and are independent of the mobile phone's memory. Up to 50 entries can be set up.

Storing the entry

1. ›Save name‹.
2. Say the name aloud. Do not exceed a speaking duration of about 2 seconds.
3. Say the phone number after being prompted to do so by the system.
4. ›Save‹.

Deleting the entry

1. ›Delete name‹.
2. Say the name when prompted.
3. Confirm the query with ›Yes‹.

Deleting all entries

1. ›Delete phonebook‹.
   The dialog for deleting phone book is opened.
2. Confirm the query with ›Yes‹.
3. Confirm the query again with ›Yes‹.

To listen to and select the entries:

1. ›Read phonebook‹.
   The dialog for reading phone book is opened.
2. Say ›Dial number‹ when the desired entry is read.

Selecting an entry

1. ›Dial name‹.
2. Say the name when prompted.
3. Confirm the query with ›Yes‹.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

Adjusting volume

Turn knob during announcement.

- ▷ The volume remains the same, even if the volume of other audio sources is changed.
- ▷ The volume is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Notes

Do not use the voice activation system to initiate an emergency call. In stressful situations, the voice and vocal pitch can change. This can unnecessarily delay the establishment of a telephone connection.

Ambient conditions

- ▷ Say the commands, numbers and letters smoothly and with normal volume, emphasis and speed.
- ▷ Always say commands in the language of the voice activation system. The language for voice operation is preset and can not be changed over the Control Display.
- ▷ Keep doors, windows, glass sunroof*/panoramic sunroof*, or convertible top* closed to avoid noise interference.
- ▷ Avoid ambient noise in the vehicle while speaking.

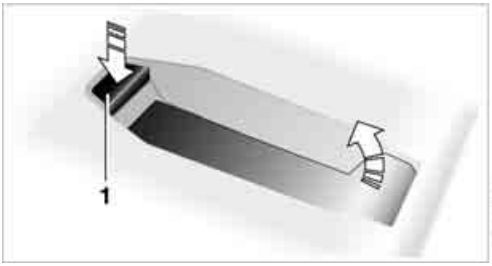
SNAP-IN ADAPTER*

Installation location

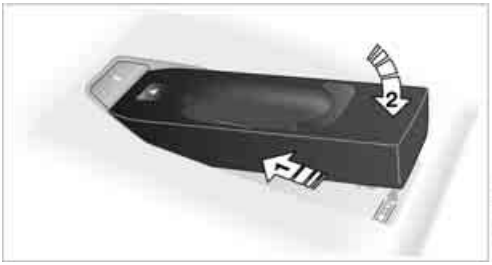
In the center armrest.

Inserting snap-in adapter

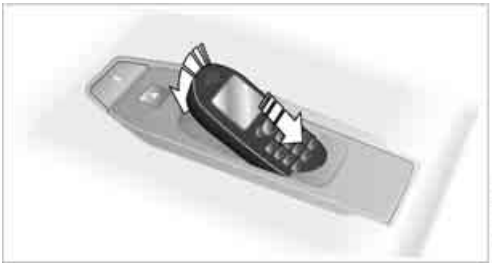
1. Press the button and remove the cover.



2. Insert the snap-in adapter at the front, arrow **1**, and press downward, arrow **2**, until it clicks into place.



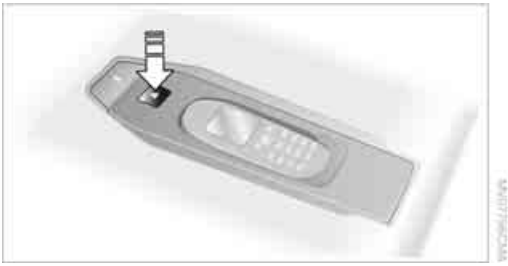
Inserting mobile phone



1. Depending on the mobile phone, it may be necessary to remove the protective cap of the antenna connector and from the USB connection of the mobile phone.
2. Push the mobile phone with the buttons facing upward toward the electrical connections and press down until it engages.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

Removing mobile phone



Press the button and remove the mobile phone.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

OFFICE*

OVERVIEW

General information

Contacts, appointments, tasks, notes, and text messages can be displayed using the Control Display if the mobile phone compatibly supports these functions and the required Bluetooth radio standards.

For information about which mobile phones and functions are available, go to www.mini.com/connectivity.

A limited number of compatible mobile phones are available for Office.

Contents are only displayed completely when the vehicle is stopped.

Only read access to the mobile phone is possible.

Do not use Office while driving. Make entries only when traffic and road conditions permit; otherwise, you may endanger vehicle occupants and other road users by being distracted.◀

Requirements

▷ A suitable mobile phone is paired with the vehicle and connected. In some mobile phones, the data access to the mobile phone must be confirmed.

▷ Time zones, time, and date, refer to page 61, are correctly adjusted on the Control Display and on the mobile phone in order, for example, to correctly display appointments.

Updating

Every time that the mobile phone is connected to the vehicle, data are updated. Deadlines, tasks, notes and reminders can be updated separately.

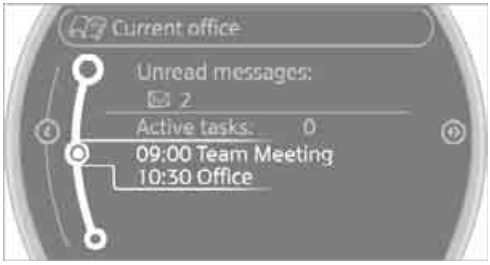
1. "Office"
2. "Current office", "Calendar", "Tasks", "Notes" or "Reminders"
3. Open "Options".
4. "Update data"

   Data from the mobile phone are re-transmitted to the vehicle.

CURRENT OFFICE

The number of unread messages and active tasks as well as upcoming appointments are displayed.

1. "Office"
2. "Current office"
3. Selecting the desired entry to display details



CONTACTS

General information

Contacts can be created and edited. The contacts from the mobile phone* are displayed as well if this function is supported by the mobile phone. The addresses can be used as destinations for navigation and the phone numbers can be dialed.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

Displaying contacts

1. "Office"
2. "Contacts"

All contacts are listed in alphabetical order. Depending on the number of contacts, an A-Z search is offered.

A symbol indicates the storage location of the contacts:

Symbol	Storage location
No symbol	In the vehicle; the address has not been checked as a destination.
	In the vehicle; the address has been checked as a destination.
	Mobile phone*

Dialing a phone number*

1. Select the desired contact.
2. Select phone number.

   The connection is established.

Editing a contact

1. Select the desired contact.
2. "Edit contact"

3. Change the entry.
4. "Store contact in vehicle"

If a contact is changed, the changes are not stored in the mobile phone*. A copy of the entry is stored in the vehicle, and only this copy is displayed.

Selecting a contact as a destination*

1. Select the desired contact.
2. Select address.

   With contacts from the mobile phone*, the address must be compared with the navigation data stored in the vehicle. In this case:

   Correct the address.

3. "Start guidance" or "Add as another destination"

Checking the address as a destination*

An address that is to be used in route guidance must correspond to the navigation data stored

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

in the vehicle. The address can be checked to ensure this.

1. Select the desired contact and highlight the address.
2. Open "Options".
3. "Check as destination"
4. Correct and store the address, if necessary.

If the address is corrected and stored, a copy of it is stored in the vehicle. The address is not changed on the mobile phone.

New contact

A contact can be associated with up to 8 phone numbers, 2 addresses, 3 email addresses, and one Internet address.

1. "Office"
2. "Contacts"
3. Open "Options".
4. "New contact"

5. If input boxes are already filled with previous entries: "Delete input fields"
6. To fill in the entry fields: select the symbol next to the entry field.
7. Enter text assign a contact type, refer to page 178.
8. When equipped with a navigation system: enter address. It is only possible to enter addresses that are contained in the navigation data stored in the vehicle. This ensures that route guidance is possible for all addresses.
9. "Accept address" if necessary
10. "Store contact in vehicle"

Contact types

Phone numbers and addresses can be assigned various contact types.

Symbol	Meaning
	Private phone number
	Business phone number
	Mobile phone number
	Other phone number
	Private address
	Business address

Defining a home address

It is possible to store a home address. It is listed at the beginning of the contacts.

1. "Home"
2. Create a contact.
3. "Store contact in vehicle"

Selecting name sorting*

Names can be displayed in different orders.

1. "Contacts"
2. Open "Options".
3. "Display: last, first name" or "Display: first, last name"

Depending on how the contacts were stored in the mobile phone, the sorting of names can differ from the sorting selected.

Displaying contact pictures*

Pictures stored with contacts are stored in the vehicle when the mobile phone is connected to the vehicle. The number of pictures transmitted depends on the mobile phone. The mobile phone must support this function.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

1. "Contacts"
2. Open "Options".
3. "Show images"

The display of all contact pictures is activated or deactivated.

Exporting/importing contacts*

Contacts can be exported and imported using Personal Profile, refer to page 26. Depending on which ignition key is in use, only contacts that are stored in the vehicle are stored.

Deleting contacts

Only contacts that are stored in the vehicle are deleted. The contacts on the mobile phone* cannot be deleted.

1. "Contacts"
2. Highlight the contact.
3. "Options"
4. "Delete contact" or "Delete all contacts".

MESSAGES

General information

The displaying of text messages depends on whether the mobile phone supports transmission to the vehicle. Text messages may not be supported by the service provider or the function may have to be separately activated. After a mobile phone is paired for the first time, the transmission may take several minutes. Messages are only displayed completely when the vehicle is stopped. Messages from the auxiliary phone are not transmitted.

Displaying messages

1. "Office"
2. "Messages"

Message type

A symbol indicates the type of message.

Read message.

Unread message.

Symbol	Message type
	Text message

Reading message aloud

Reading text messages aloud, refer to page 182.

Text message

Calling a text message sender

1. Select the desired message.
2. Select the symbol.

Saving sender in the contacts

1. Highlight the desired message.
2. Open "Options".
3. "Store as new contact" or "Add to existing contact"

CALENDAR

Displaying calendar

Appointments from the last 20 days and the next 50 days can be displayed.

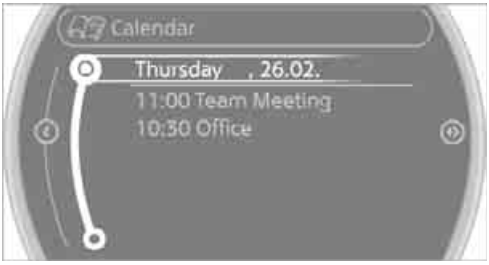
1. "Office"
2. "Calendar"

   Appointments of the current day are displayed.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

Selecting calendar day

1. Select date.



2. Select desired day or date.
   - ▷ "Next day"
   - ▷ "Date:"
   - ▷ "Previous day"
   - ▷ "Today"

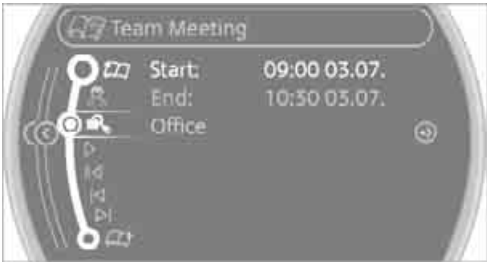
Displaying appointment

1. Select the desired appointment.
2. To scroll through appointment, if necessary:
   - ▷ Turn the MINI joystick.
   - ▷ Select the symbol.

Using contact data

If the appointment contains phone numbers or email addresses, then these can be used directly or stored in the contacts.

1. "Use contact data"



2. To display a contact or dial a phone number:
   - ▷ Select a contact to display a detailed view of the contact.
   - ▷ Select a phone number to directly establish a connection.

Storing contact data

1. "Use contact data"
2. Highlight a phone number or email address.
3. Open "Options".
4. "Add to existing contact" or "Store as new contact"

Reading an appointment aloud

Reading an appointment aloud, refer to page 182.

TASKS

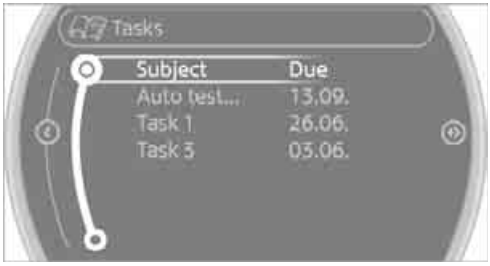
Displaying task list

Display open tasks that must be completed within the next 90 days.

1. "Office"
2. "Tasks"

Sorting task list

1. Select the top line in the task list.



2. To select sorting criterion:
   - ▷ "Priority (!)"
   - ▷ "Subject"
   - ▷ "Due date"

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

Displaying task

1. Select the desired task.
2. To scroll through the task, if necessary:
   - ▷ Turn the MINI joystick.
   - ▷ Select the symbol.

Using contact data

If the task contains phone numbers or email addresses, then these can be used directly or stored in the contacts.

1. "Use contact data"
2. To display a contact or dial a phone number:
   - ▷ Select a contact to display a detailed view of the contact.
   - ▷ Select a phone number to directly establish a connection.

Storing contact data

1. Highlight a phone number or email address.
2. Open "Options".
3. "Add to existing contact" or "Store as new contact"

Reading a task aloud

Reading a task aloud, refer to page 182.

NOTES

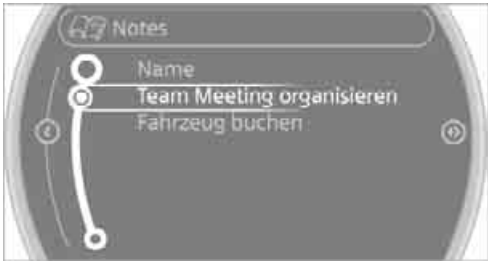
Displaying notes

1. "Office"
2. "Notes"

   All notes are displayed.

Displaying a note

1. Select the desired note.



2. To scroll through the note, if necessary:
   - ▷ Turn the MINI joystick.
   - ▷ Select the symbol.

Using contact data

If the note contains phone numbers or email addresses, then these can be used directly or stored in the contacts.

1. "Use contact data"
2. To display a contact or dial a phone number:
   - ▷ Select a contact to display a detailed view of the contact.
   - ▷ Select a phone number to directly establish a connection.

Storing contact data

1. Highlight a phone number or email address.
2. Open "Options".
3. "Add to existing contact" or "Store as new contact"

Reading a note aloud

Reading a note aloud, refer to page 182.

REMINDERS

Displaying reminders

Reminders for imminent appointments and tasks are displayed. After an appointment has passed or a task is due, the reminder is deleted.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

1. "Office"
2. "Reminders"
3. Select the desired reminder.

The associated appointment or task is displayed.

READING ALOUD

Text messages, appointment entries, tasks, and notes can be read aloud to you.

1. Select the desired message, appointment, task, or note.
2. Select the ▷ symbol.

While the message is being read aloud, you have the following options:

▷ ❙❙ "Pause"

Interrupt the reading. Select again to resume the reading.

▷ |◁ "Back to beginning"

Read message again from the beginning.

▷ Select the |◁ symbol.

Skip back one paragraph.

▷ Select the ▷| symbol.

Skip over a paragraph.

▷ To terminate the reading, move the MINI joystick to the left.

WHAT TO DO IF...

For information on suitable mobile phones, refer to page 163.

▷ Appointments, tasks, notes, or text messages are not being displayed?

The mobile phone is not suitable for the missing function or is not correctly connected.

The mobile phone is connected as an auxiliary phone.

The Office function is deactivated.

The appointments are older than 20 days and are more than 50 days in the future.

The tasks have been marked as completed or are more than 90 days in the future.

Depending on the number of appointments, tasks, notes, and messages stored in the mobile phone, not all of them are displayed in the vehicle.

▷ Appointments or tasks from the mobile phone are not being displayed at the correct time?

The time zone, time, or date is incorrectly set in the Control Display and in the mobile phone.

▷ Texts of entries are not displayed completely?

Texts are already shortened by the mobile phone.

Synchronization between the mobile phone and vehicle can take a few minutes.

▷ Contact pictures are not being displayed?

Up to max. 200 contact pictures can be stored in the vehicle.

▷ If you have gone through all items in the list and still cannot activate the desired function please contact the Hotline or your MINI dealer.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

MINI CONNECTED*

OVERVIEW

The concept

You can use MINI Connected to integrate certain software applications of a suitable mobile phone into your MINI. These software applications are displayed on the Control Display. They are operated using the MINI joystick.

The range of software applications can be country-specific.

Requirements

The following requirements must be met for the function of MINI Connected:

- ▷ The operating system of the mobile phone must support the software applications of MINI Connected.
- ▷ The software applications are installed on the mobile phone and are operational.
- ▷ Suitable mobile phone
- ▷ Appropriate mobile phone contract.

  Possible additional costs incurred are not included with MINI Connected.

⚠ Only make entries when the traffic situation allows you to do so. If you do not observe this precaution, your being distracted can endanger vehicle occupants and other road users.
For safety reasons, some software applications can only be used when the vehicle is stopped.◀

⚠ Only use software applications approved by the manufacturer of your MINI; otherwise, malfunctions may result.◀

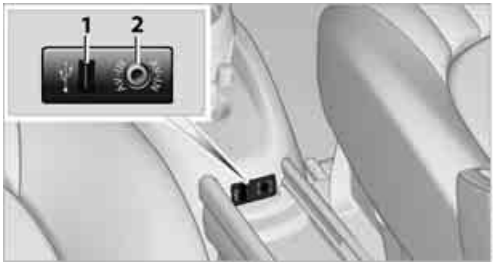
Notes

For information on suitable mobile phones, available software applications, and their installation:

- ▷ at: www.mini.com/connectivity
- ▷ at your MINI dealer.

CONNECTING A MOBILE PHONE

Connect via the USB audio interface



1 USB interface

2 Connection for audio/video playback: TRS connector 1/8"/3.5 mm

Connect the mobile phone using the special connecting cable, available at your MINI dealer, to the USB interface **1** and the AV-IN connection **2**.

To perform other operations on the mobile phone, refer to the Owner's Manual for the mobile phone: e.g. selecting and activating a software application.

Connecting via the snap-in adapter*

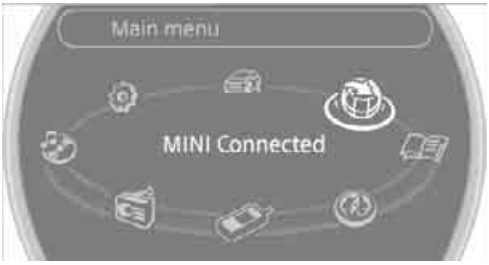
The mobile phone can also be connected using the snap-in adapter, refer to page 174.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

USING MINI CONNECTED

After successful connection of the mobile phone to the vehicle and activation of MINI Connected, the applications are displayed on the Control Display and can be operated using the MINI joystick.
Volume adjustments can be made using the buttons on the steering wheel, refer to page 10, or using the volume control knob on the radio, refer to page 130.

1. Press the button.
   This opens the main menu.
2. "MINI Connected"



3. Select the desired software application.

The extent of MINI Connected that is shown on the Control Display depends on the range of installed software applications on the mobile phone.

The data transfer of the software application from the telephone to the vehicle can take a few minutes. Some software applications depend on the speed of the available Internet connection for the mobile phone.◀

Certain versions of mobile phones used and their software can make it impossible to use MINI Connected and the Bluetooth hands-free system at the same time.
After a phone call, it may be necessary to restart the software application on the mobile phone.

PlugIn*

Selected functions of an Apple device are shown on the Control Display. They are operated using the on-board computer.

1. Connecting an Apple device over a USB audio interface, refer to page 183.
2. "MINI Connected"
3. "PlugIn"
4. "Activate PlugIn"
5. Navigating among the functions shown via a MINI joystick and, e.g., selecting a desired category or track.

Press the button to switch back or to switch to a higher level within the functions of an Apple device.

Press the button twice to switch back to the main menu.

Additional information can be found in the MINI Connected operating instructions at www.mini.com/connectivity.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

MOVE ME.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

AT A GLANCE

CONTROLS

DRIVING TIPS

NAVIGATION

ENTERTAINMENT

COMMUNICATIONS

MOBILITY

REFERENCE

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

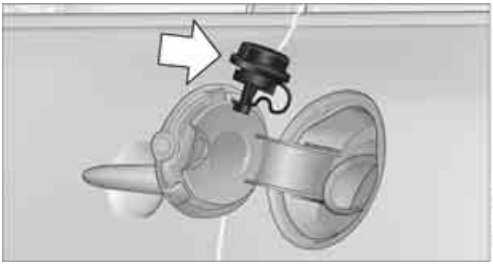
REFUELING

Switch off the engine before refueling; otherwise, fuel cannot be added to the tank and a message will be displayed.◀

Take all precautionary measures and observe all applicable regulations when handling fuel. Do not carry any spare fuel containers in your vehicle. They can develop a leak and cause an explosion or cause a fire in the event of an accident.◀

FUEL FILLER FLAP

Opening



1. Open the fuel filler flap.
2. Turn the fuel cap counterclockwise.
3. Place the fuel cap in the bracket attached to the fuel filler flap.

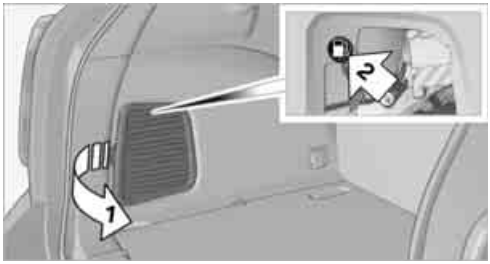
Closing

Fit the cap and turn it clockwise until you clearly hear a click.

Do not pinch the band attached to the cap; otherwise, the cap cannot be closed properly and fuel vapors can escape. A message will be displayed if the fuel cap is loose or missing.◀

Manually releasing the fuel filler flap

In the event of an electrical malfunction, you can manually release the fuel filler flap:



1. Open cargo area trim panel, arrow **1**.
2. Pull the green knob with the gas pump symbol, arrow **2**.

   The fuel filler flap opens.

Observe the following when refueling

Take all precautionary measures and observe all applicable regulations when handling fuel; otherwise, there is a danger of personal injury and property damage.◀

When refueling, insert the filler nozzle completely into the filler pipe. Avoid lifting the filler nozzle while filling the tank, as that would lead to

- premature pump shutoff
- reduced efficiency of the fuel-vapor recovery system.

The fuel tank is full when you top off twice after the first time that the fuel pump nozzle clicks off.

Fuel tank capacity

Refuel as soon as possible once your cruising range falls below 30 miles/50 km, otherwise engine functions are not ensured and damage can occur.◀

Approx. 12.3 US gal/47 liters, including the reserve capacity of 2.1 US gal/8 liters.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

FUEL SPECIFICATIONS

Fuels that are labeled at the pump as containing metal may not be used.

Do not fill the tank with leaded gasoline or gasoline that contains metal additives, such as manganese or iron; otherwise, long term damage to the catalytic converter or other components may result.
Do not fill the tank with E85, i.e. fuel containing 85 % ethanol, nor with FlexFuel. Otherwise, the engine and fuel supply system will be damaged.◀

Required fuel

Super premium gasoline/AKI 91

This gasoline is highly recommended.

However, you may also use gasoline with less AKI. The minimum AKI rating is:

▷ Cooper S: 89

▷ Cooper: 87

If you use gasoline with this minimum AKI rating, the engine may produce knocking sounds when starting at high outside temperatures. This has no effect on the engine life.

Do not use any gasoline below the specified minimum fuel grade. Otherwise, the engine could be damaged.◀

Use high-quality brands

Field experience has indicated significant differences in fuel quality: volatility, composition, additives, etc., among gasolines offered for sale in the United States and Canada. Fuels containing up to and including 10 % ethanol or other oxygenates with up to 2.8 % oxygen by weight, that is, 15 % MTBE or 3 % methanol plus an equivalent amount of cosolvent, will not void the applicable warranties with respect to defects in materials or workmanship.

The use of poor-quality fuels may result in drivability, starting and stalling problems especially under certain environmental conditions such as high ambient temperature and high altitude.
Should you encounter drivability problems which you suspect could be related to the fuel you are using, we recommend that you respond by switching to a recognized high-quality brand such as gasoline that is advertised as Top Tier Detergent Gasoline.
Failure to comply with these recommendations may also result in unscheduled maintenance.◀

MINI recommends BP fuels

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

WHEELS AND TIRES

TIRE INFLATION PRESSURES

Information for your safety

It is not merely the tires' service life, but also driving comfort and, to a great extent, driving safety that depend on the condition of the tires and the maintenance of the specified tire pressure.

Checking pressure

Check the tire inflation pressure regularly and correct it, if necessary: at least twice a month and before starting long trips. If you fail to observe this precaution you may be driving on tires with incorrect tire pressures, a condition that can not only compromise your vehicle's driving stability, but also lead to tire damage and the risk of an accident. Do not drive with deflated, i.e. flat tires, except when using run-flat tires. A flat tire will seriously impair your vehicle's handling and braking response. Attempts to drive on a flat tire can lead to loss of control over the vehicle.◀

Check the tire inflation pressures only on cold tires. This means after a maximum of 1.25 miles/ 2 km driving or when the vehicle has been parked for at least 2 hours. When tires are warm, the tire inflation pressure is higher.

After adjusting the tire inflation pressure, reinitialize the flat tire monitor, page 70, or reset the Tire Pressure Monitor, page 73.◀

Pressure specifications

The tables below provide all the correct inflation pressures for the specified tire sizes at ambient temperature.

The tire inflation pressures apply to the tire sizes approved and the tire brands recommended by the manufacturer of your MINI. Your MINI dealer will be glad to advise you.◀

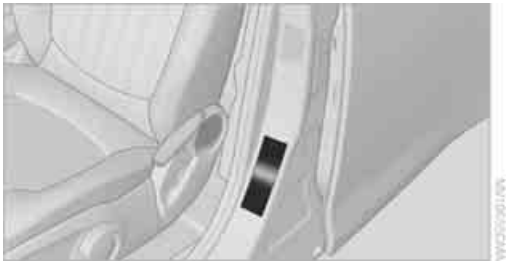
For correct identification of the right tire inflation pressures, observe the following:

- ▷ Tire sizes for your vehicle
- ▷ Maximum allowable driving speed

Tire inflation pressures for driving up to 100 mph or 160 km/h

For normal driving up to 100 mph or 160 km/h and to achieve optimum driving comfort, adjust pressures to the respective tire inflation pressures listed on the following pages in the columns for traveling speeds up to a maximum of 100 mph or 160 km/h.

These tire inflation pressures can also be found on the driver's side door pillar when the driver's door is open.



The maximum permitted speed for these tire inflation pressures is 100 mph or 160 km/h. Do not exceed this speed; otherwise, tire damage and accidents may occur.◀

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

Tire inflation pressures for driving above 100 mph or 160 km/h

In order to drive at maximum speeds in excess of 100 mph or 160 km/h, adjust pressures to the respective tire inflation pressures listed on the following pages in the columns for traveling speeds including those exceeding 100 mph or 160 km/h. Otherwise, tire damage and accidents could occur.◀

Observe all national and local maximum speed limits; otherwise, violations of the law could occur.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

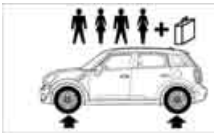
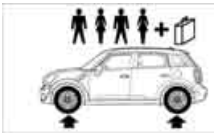
Tire inflation pressures MINI Cooper Countryman

Tire size	Pressure specifications in psi/kPa			
	Speeds up to a max. of 100 mph / 160 km/h		Speeds including those exceeding 100 mph / 160 km/h	
All pressure specifications in the table are indicated in psi/kilopascal with cold tires. Cold = ambient temperature				
195/60 R 16 89 H M+S 205/55 R 17 91 H M+S 205/55 R 17 91 H M+S RSC 205/55 R 17 91 V RSC 225/45 R 18 91 V RSC 225/40 R 19 89 V RSC	32/220	32/220	35/240	35/240

More details on the permissible load and weights can be found on page 226.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

Tire inflation pressures MINI Cooper S Countryman / Cooper S ALL4 Countryman

Tire size	Pressure specifications in psi/kPa			
	Speeds up to a max. of 100 mph / 160 km/h		Speeds including those exceeding 100 mph / 160 km/h	
All pressure specifications in the table are indicated in psi/kilopascal with cold tires. Cold = ambient temperature				
195/60 R 16 89 H M+S 205/55 R 17 91 H M+S 205/55 R 17 91 H M+S RSC 205/55 R 17 91 V RSC 225/45 R 18 91 V RSC 225/40 R 19 89 V RSC	32/220	32/220	38/260	38/260
More details on the permissible load and weights can be found on page 226.				

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

TIRE IDENTIFICATION MARKS

Knowledge of the labeling on the side of the tire makes it easier to identify and choose the right tires.

Tire size

e.g. 225/45 R 17 91 V

Nominal width in mm
Aspect ratio in %
Radial belt construction
Rim diameter in inches
Load rating, not on ZR tires
Speed code letter, in front of the R on ZR tires

Speed letter

Q = up to 100 mph or 160 km/h

T = up to 118 mph or 190 km/h

H = up to 131 mph or 210 km/h

V = up to 150 mph or 240 km/h

W = up to 167 mph or 270 km/h

Y = up to 186 mph or 300 km/h

Tire Identification Number

Tires with DOT codes meet the guidelines of the US Department of Transportation.

DOT code:

Uniform Tire Quality Grading

For instance: DOT xxxx xxx 0211

Manufacturer's code for tire make
Tire size and tire design
Tire age

Quality grades can be found where applicable on the tire sidewall between tread shoulder and maximum section width. For example:

Tread wear 200 Traction AA
Temperature A

DOT Quality Grades

Tread wear
Traction AA A B C
Temperature A B C

All passenger car tires must conform to Federal Safety Requirements in addition to these grades.◀

Tread wear

The tread wear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course. For example, a tire graded 150 would wear one and one-half (1 ½) times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100. The relative performance of tires depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and may depart significantly from the norm due to variations in driving habits, service practices and differences in road characteristics and climate.

Traction

The traction grades, from highest to lowest, are AA, A, B, and C.
Those grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.

The traction grade assigned to this tire is based on straight-ahead braking traction tests, and does not include acceleration, cornering, hydroplaning, or peak traction characteristics.◀

Temperature

The temperature grades are A, the highest, B, and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel. Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tire to degenerate and reduce tire life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tire

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

failure. The grade C corresponds to a level of performance which all passenger car tires must meet under the Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard No. 109. Grades B and A represent levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel that exceed the minimum required by law.

The temperature grade for this tire is established for a tire that is properly inflated and not overloaded. Excessive speed, underinflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat buildup and possible tire failure.◀

RSC - run-flat tires*

You will recognize run-flat tires by a circular symbol containing the letters RSC on the side of the tire, page 196.

M+S

Winter and all-season tires.
These have better winter properties than summer tires.

XL

Designation for specially reinforced tires.

TIRE CONDITION

Inspect your tires regularly for tread wear, signs of damage and for foreign objects lodged in the tread. Check the tread depth.

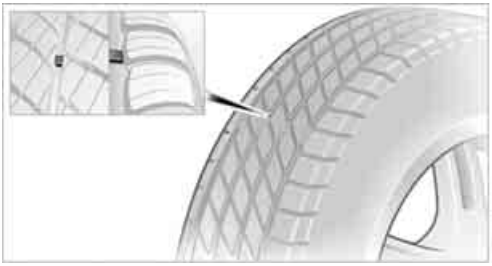
Tread depth

The tread depth should not drop below 0.12 in/3 mm, although, for example, European legislation only specifies a minimum tread depth of 0.063 in/1.6 mm. At tread depths below 0.12 in/3 mm there is an increased risk of high-speed hydroplaning, even when only small amounts of water are present on the road surface.

Winter tires

When winter tires wear down past a tread depth of 0.16 in/4 mm, they become perceptibly less suitable for winter conditions. In the interest of safety, new tires should be installed.

Minimum tread depth



Wear indicators in the base of the tread groove are distributed around the tire's circumference; the letters TWI, for Tread Wear Indicator, on the tire's sidewalls identify tires that incorporate these wear indicators. If the tire tread has been driven down to the wear indicators, a tread depth of 0.063 in/1.6 mm has been reached.

Tire damage

Due to low-profile tires, please note that wheels, tires and suspensions parts are more susceptible to road hazards and consequential damages.

Unusual vibrations encountered during normal vehicle operation can indicate tire failure or some other vehicle defect. This can, for example, be caused by driving over curbs. The same applies to any other abnormal road behavior, such as pulling severely to the right or left.

In these cases, reduce speed immediately and have wheels and tires thoroughly checked. To do so, drive carefully to the nearest MINI dealer or tire shop that works according to MINI repair procedures with correspondingly trained personnel. If necessary, have the vehicle towed there.
Otherwise, tire damage can be extremely dangerous for vehicle occupants and other road users.◀

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

Tire age

The manufacturing date of tires is contained in the tire coding:
DOT ... 0211 means that the tire was manufactured in week 2 of 2011.

For various reasons, such as the development of brittleness, the manufacturer of your MINI recommends tire replacement after no more than 6 years, regardless of the actual wear of the tires.

RUN-FLAT TIRES*

The symbol identifying run-flat tires is a circle with the letters RSC on the sidewall.
Run-flat tires comprise a conditionally self-supporting tire and a special rim. The reinforcement in the sidewalls ensures that the tire can continue to be used subject to certain restrictions, even if depressurized.

For information on continuing to drive with a flat tire, refer to Indication of a flat tire, page 71.

NEW WHEELS AND TIRES

Have new wheels and tires mounted only by your MINI dealer or a specialized tire shop that has specially trained personnel working in accordance with the specifications of the MINI manufacturer. If this work is not carried out properly, there is a danger of subsequent damage and related safety hazards. Make sure that the new wheels are balanced.◀

Retreaded tires

The manufacturer of your MINI recommends that you avoid using retreaded tires, as this could impair driving safety. The causes for this include potentially different tire casing structures and often wide variations in tire age, which can result in a limited service life.◀

Correct wheels and tires

The manufacturer of your MINI recommends mounting only wheels and tires that it has specifically approved for use on your particular model. Although other wheels and tires may theoretically have the same dimensions, variations in factors such as manufacturing tolerances can result in contact between tire and bodywork, ultimately leading to serious accidents. The manufacturer of your MINI cannot evaluate non-approved wheels and tires to determine if they are suited for use, and therefore cannot ensure the operating safety of the vehicle if they are mounted.◀

Your MINI dealer will be glad to inform you about the correct wheel and tire combination for your vehicle.

The correct combination of wheels and tires is also necessary to ensure reliable operation of various vehicle systems such as ABS and DSC.

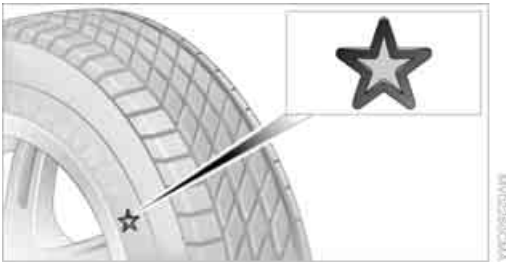
To maintain good handling and vehicle response, use only tires of a single brand and tread configuration. After a tire has been damaged, mount the previous wheel and tire combination again as soon as possible.

Wheels with Tire Pressure Monitor TPM electronics

When mounting new tires or changing over from summer to winter tires, or vice versa, only use wheels with TPM electronics; otherwise, the Tire Pressure Monitor may not be able to detect a puncture, refer to page 73. Your MINI dealer will be glad to advise you.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

Recommended tire brands



For each tire size, the manufacturer of your MINI recommends certain tire brands. They are marked with a clearly visible MINI designation on the sidewall of the tire.

When properly used, these tires meet the highest standards in terms of safety and handling characteristics.

Run-flat tires*

When mounting new tires or changing over from summer to winter tires and vice versa, mount run-flat tires for your own safety. Keep in mind that no space-saver spare tire is available in the event of a flat. Your MINI dealer will be glad to advise you.

Special characteristics of winter tires

The manufacturer of your MINI recommends the use of winter tires on snowy roads or if temperatures drop below 457/ +76. Although all-season M+S tires provide better winter traction than summer tires, they generally fail to provide the same levels of cold-weather performance as winter tires.

Pay attention to speed

Always comply with the speed limit for the winter tires mounted on your car; failure to do so could result in tire damage and accidents.◀

If the car is capable of speeds higher than that permitted for the winter tires, a label stating the maximum permitted speed for the mounted tires must be displayed in your field of view. This label is available at your tire dealer or MINI dealer.

Storage

Always store wheels and tires in a cool, dry place with as little exposure to light as possible. Always protect tires against all contact with oil, grease and fuels.

Do not exceed the maximum tire inflation pressure indicated on the side wall of the tire.

Swapping wheels among the axles

Depending on the individual use, front and rear tires may exhibit different wear and tear.

In order to maintain an even wear and tear, the wheels may be rotated between the axles. Your MINI dealer will be glad to advise you.

Always check the inflation pressure after the tire rotation, if necessary change the pressure.

SNOW CHAINS*

Only certain types of fine-link snow chains have been tested by the manufacturer of your MINI, classified as road-safe and recommended. Contact your MINI dealer for more details.

Only attach snow chains in pairs to the front wheels with the following tires.

▷ 195/60 R 16 M+S

Observe the manufacturer's instructions when mounting snow chains. Do not exceed a speed of 30 mph or 50 km/h.

Do not initialize the Flat Tire Monitor if snow chains are mounted; otherwise, the instrument might issue an incorrect reading. When driving with snow chains, it can be useful to briefly deactivate the DSC or activate the DTC, refer to page 68.◀

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

UNDER THE HOOD

Never attempt to perform any service or repair operations on your vehicle without the required professional technical training. If you are not familiar with the regulations to be observed, have the necessary work on your vehicle carried out only by a MINI dealer or a workshop that has specially trained personnel working in accordance with the specifications of the MINI manufacturer. If this work is not carried out properly, there is a danger of subsequent damage and related safety hazards.◀

HOOD

Releasing

Pull the lever.

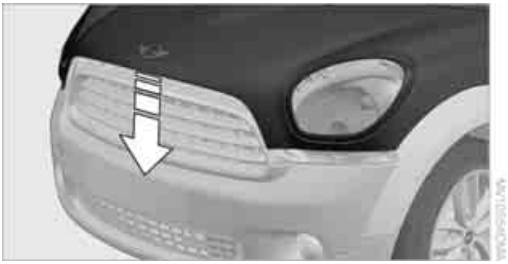
Do not clean the windshield and head-lamps if the hood is unlocked as this may damage the headlamp washer system*.◀

Opening

To avoid damage, make sure that the wiper arms are against the windshield before you open the hood.◀

Press the release handle and open the hood.

Closing

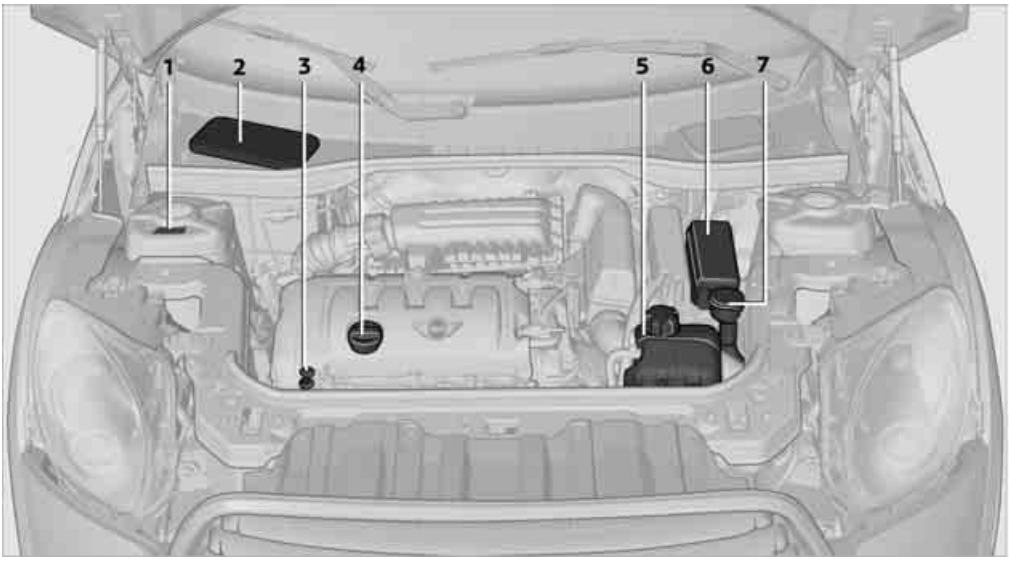


Close the hood from a height of approx. 16 in/ 40 cm with momentum. It must be clearly heard to engage.

If you notice any signs while driving your vehicle that the hood is not completely closed, stop at once and close it securely. Make sure that the closing path of the hood is clear; otherwise, injuries may result.◀

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

IMPORTANT PARTS OF THE ENGINE COMPARTMENT



1 Vehicle identification number*
2 Battery, under the cover 219
3 Engine oil dipstick 199
4 Engine oil filler neck 200
5 Coolant expansion tank 200
6 Engine compartment fuse box 216
7 Reservoir for washer fluid for the headlamp and window washer system 53

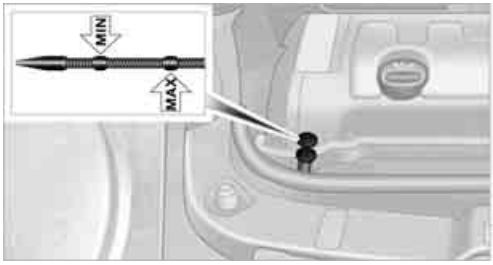
ENGINE OIL

The engine oil consumption is dependent on driving style and driving conditions.

Check the engine oil level regularly, e.g. when refueling.

Checking engine oil level

1. With the vehicle's engine at normal operating temperature, i.e. after uninterrupted driving for at least 6 miles/10 km, park the vehicle on a level surface.
2. Switch off the engine.
3. Pull the dipstick out after approx. 5 minutes and wipe it off with a lint-free cloth, paper towel or similar material.
4. Carefully push the dipstick all the way into the guide tube and pull it out again.
   The oil level should be between the two marks on the dipstick.

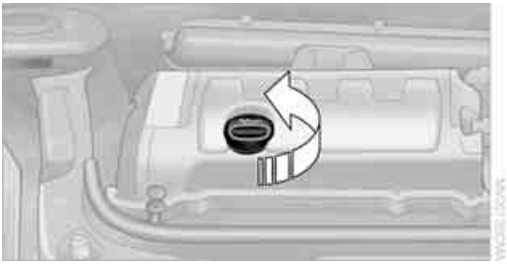


The oil quantity corresponding to the difference between the two marks on the dipstick is 1 US quart/1 liter.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

Do not fill beyond the upper mark on the dipstick. Excess oil will damage the engine.◀

Adding engine oil



Do not add the maximum quantity of 1 US quart/1 liter of engine oil until the oil level has dropped to just above the lower mark on the dipstick, page 199.

Add oil within the next 30 miles/50 km; otherwise, the engine could be damaged.◀

If too much oil is added, immediately have the vehicle checked; otherwise, engine damage may result.◀

Keep oils, greases, etc. out of the reach of children and comply with the warnings on the containers. Otherwise, health hazards may result.◀

Oil types for re-filling

Notes

Do not use oil additives as this could result in engine damage.◀

When choosing oil, ensure that it belongs to one of the SAE viscosity classes 0W-40, 0W-30, 5W-40 and 5W-30; otherwise, malfunctions and damage to the engine may result.◀

The engine oil quality is critical for the life of the engine.

Some types of oil may not be available in every country.

Approved oil types

Gasoline engines
BMW High Performance SAE 5W-30
BMW Longlife-01
BMW Longlife-01 FE

Additional information on approved types of oil can be found at a dealer.

Alternative oil types

If the approved engine oils are not available, up to 1 US quart/1 liter of another oil with the following specification may be used:

Gasoline engines
API SM or higher specifications

Oil change

Only dealers are to perform oil changes.

MINI RECOMMENDS Castrol

COOLANT

Coolant consists of half water and half additive. Not all commercially available additives are suitable for your MINI. Your MINI dealer knows which additives are suitable and will be glad to advise you.

Only use suitable additives; otherwise, engine damage may result. Because additives are harmful to your health, it is important to follow the instructions on the containers.◀

Comply with the appropriate environmental protection regulations when disposing of coolant additives.◀

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

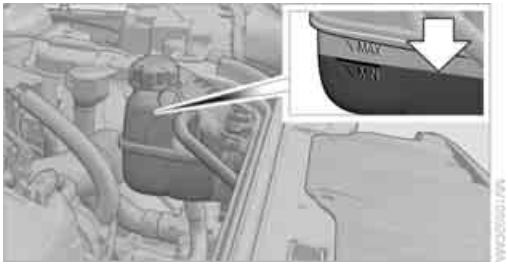
Coolant temperature

A warning light will come on if the coolant, and therefore the engine, becomes too hot.
A message appears on the Control Display.

Checking coolant level

Do not add coolant to the cooling system when the engine is hot. Escaping coolant can cause burns.◀

Do not open the hood until the engine has cooled down.



The coolant level is correct if it is between the Min and Max markings.

Topping off

1. Turn the cap of the expansion tank a little counterclockwise to allow any accumulated pressure to escape, then continue turning to open.
2. Slowly fill to the correct fluid level; do not overfill.
3. Close by turning the cap.

Have the reason for the coolant loss eliminated as soon as possible.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

MAINTENANCE

MINI MAINTENANCE SYSTEM

The MINI Maintenance System supports the preservation of the traffic and operating safety of your MINI. The objective is to optimize efforts with respect to minimal vehicle maintenance costs.

If and when you come to sell your MINI, a comprehensive record of servicing will prove a significant benefit.

Condition Based Service CBS

Sensors and special algorithms take the different driving conditions of your MINI into account. Condition Based Service uses this to determine the current and future service requirements. By letting you define a service and maintenance regimen that reflects your own individual requirements, the system builds the basis for trouble-free driving.

On the Control Display, you can have the remaining times or distances for selected maintenance tasks and any legally prescribed dates displayed, page 59.

Service data in the remote control

Your vehicle continuously stores service-requirement information in the remote control while you are driving. Your MINI dealer can read out this data from the remote control unit, and propose an optimized maintenance approach. Whenever you take your car in for servicing you should therefore hand your MINI dealer the remote control unit that you last used.

Make sure that the date is always set correctly, page 62; otherwise, the effectiveness of Condition Based Service CBS is not assured.◀

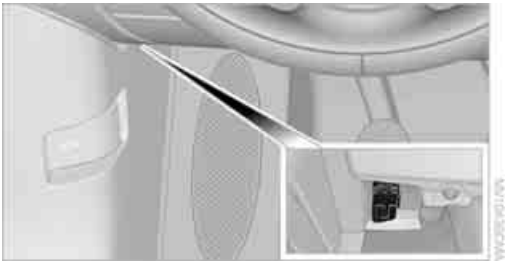
Service and Warranty Information Booklet for US models and Warranty and Service Guide Booklet for Canadian models

Please consult your Service and Warranty Information Booklet for US models and Warranty and Service Guide Booklet for Canadian models for additional information on service requirements.

The manufacturer of the MINI recommends that you have service and repair operations performed at your MINI dealer. Take the time to ensure that these service procedures are confirmed by entries in your vehicle's Service and Warranty Information Booklet for US models and Warranty and Service Guide Booklet for Canadian models. These entries verify that your vehicle has received the specified regular maintenance.◀

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

SOCKET FOR ON-BOARD DIAGNOSIS OBD



The primary components that make up the emissions can be checked by a device via the OBD socket.

EMISSIONS

The warning lamps come on. The vehicle is producing higher emissions. You can continue your journey, but moderate your speed and exercise due caution. Have the car checked as soon as possible.

Under certain circumstances, one of the lamps will flash or light up continuously. This indicates excessive misfiring or a malfunction in the engine. If this happens, reduce your speed and visit the nearest MINI dealer as soon as possible. Severe misfiring can quickly lead to serious damage of emissions-related components, especially the catalytic converter. In addition, mechanical engine components can become damaged.

If the fuel filler cap is not properly tightened, the OBD system may conclude that fuel vapors are escaping, causing an indicator to light up. If the filler cap is then tightened, the indicator should go out within a few days.

Data memory

Your vehicle displays data about the operation, malfunctions, and user settings. These data are stored in the vehicle and can be partly stored in the remote control; the data can be read by suitable devices, in particular at your service center. The data read out are used for supporting the service processes and repair or for optimization and development of vehicle functions.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

CARE

CAR-CARE PRODUCTS

Regular cleaning and care helps to maintain the value of your MINI.

The manufacturer of your MINI recommends using manufacturer-approved products to clean and care for your vehicle.

Your MINI dealer would be pleased to advise you on cleaning and care products and services for your MINI.

The ingredients of original MINI Care Products have been tested, and the products have been tested in the laboratory and in practice. They offer optimum care and protection for your vehicle.◀

Do not use any cleansers containing alcohol or solvents as these may cause damage.◀

Cleaning agents may contain hazardous or health-damaging substances. Follow the warning and hazard instructions on the packaging. For interior cleaning, always open the doors or windows of the vehicle.
Do not use any products that are not intended for cleaning the vehicle.◀

EXTERNAL CARE

Washing your vehicle

Especially during the winter months the vehicle should be frequently washed. Dirt and road salt can damage the vehicle.◀

After washing the vehicle, apply the brakes briefly to dry them; otherwise, water can reduce braking efficiency over the short term and the brake rotors can corrode.◀

Car washes

Preference should be given to cloth car washes.

Do not use automatic high-pressure car washes; otherwise, water may drip into the vehicle around the windows.◀

Before driving into the car wash, check if the system is suitable for your MINI. Observe the following points:

- ▷ Vehicle dimensions, page 225
- ▷ If necessary: fold in the outside mirrors, page 41
- ▷ Maximum permissible tire width

Avoid car washes with tracks higher than 4 in/10 cm; otherwise, the chassis could be damaged.◀

Preparations for driving into the car wash:

- ▷ Unscrew the rod antenna.
- ▷ Deactivate the rain sensor* to prevent unintentional wiping.
- ▷ Deactivate rear window wiper and protect it from damage. Ask the car wash operator about measures that can be taken to protect the wipers.
- ▷ Remove additional attachments, e.g. spoilers or telephone antennas, if there is a possibility that they could be damaged.
- ▷ Inserting the remote control into the ignition lock.

Automatic transmission

Before driving into the car wash, make sure that the vehicle can roll:

1. Place the remote control, even with Comfort Access, in the ignition lock.
2. Move the selector lever to position N.
3. Release the parking brake.
4. Switch off the engine.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

5. Insert the remote control in the ignition lock so that the vehicle can roll.

Steam jets/high-pressure washers

When using steam jets or high-pressure washers, make sure that you maintain sufficient distance from the vehicle and do not exceed a maximum temperature of 140°F/60°C. If the distance is too close, the pressure too high, or the temperature too high, parts of the vehicle can be damaged, or water can penetrate. Observe the operating instructions for high-pressure washers.◀

Do not spray sensors such as Park Distance Control with high-pressure washers for a long time and maintain the greatest possible distance of approx. 1 ft/30 cm from them.◀

Manual washing

Use a great deal of water and, if necessary, car shampoo when washing your car by hand. Clean the vehicle with a sponge or a washing brush applying a slight amount of pressure.

Before cleaning the windshield, deactivate the rain sensor or turn off the ignition to prevent unintentional wiping.◀

Observe local regulations regarding washing vehicles by hand.◀

Headlamps

Do not wipe dry and do not use abrasive or corrosive cleaning agents. Remove dirt and contamination, such as insects, by soaking with shampoo and then washing with plenty of water.

Do not remove accumulated ice and snow with an ice scraper; use window deicers instead.

Windows

Clean the outside and inside of the windows and mirrors with a window cleaner.

Do not clean the mirrors with cleaners containing quartz.◀

Wiper blades

Clean with soapy water and change regularly to prevent the formation of streaks.

Wax, preservatives and dirt on the windows cause streaks when the windshield wipers are on, and can cause premature wear of the wiper blades and interfere with the rain sensor.◀

Paintwork, care

Regular care helps your vehicle retain its value and protects the paint from the long-term effects of aggressive substances.

In some regions, environmental factors can affect the vehicle paintwork and damage it. It is therefore important to adjust the frequency and extent of vehicle care correspondingly.

Immediately remove aggressive materials such as spilled fuel, oil, grease, brake fluid, tree sap or bird droppings to prevent damage to the paintwork.

Removing paintwork damage

Depending on the severity of the damage, immediately repair stone damage or scratches to prevent rusting.◀

The manufacturer of the MINI recommends repairing paint damage professionally according to factory specifications with original MINI paints.

Preservation

Preservation is necessary when water no longer beads on the clean paint surface. To preserve the paint, only use preservatives that contain carnauba or synthetic waxes.

Rubber seals

Only treat with water or rubber care products.

Do not use silicon sprays or other silicon-containing care products on rubber seals; otherwise, noise and damage could occur.◀

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

Chrome parts*

Carefully clean vehicle parts such as the radiator grill and door handles with copious quantities of water and, if necessary, a shampoo additive, especially when contaminated with road salt. For additional treatment, use chrome polish.

Light alloy wheels*

The system produces brake dust that collects on the light alloy wheels. Clean them regularly with acid-free wheel cleaner.

Do not use aggressive, acid-containing, highly alkaline, or abrasive cleansers or steam jets hotter than 1407/606 as they may cause damage.◀

External sensors

Keep the outside sensors on the vehicle such as the Park Distance Control clean and ice-free to ensure that they function properly.◀

INTERNAL CARE

Upholstery/fabrics

Regularly use a vacuum cleaner to remove surface dirt.

In case of serious spots such as liquid stains, use a soft sponge or lint-free microfiber cloth and suitable interior cleaners. Observe the instructions on the packaging.

Clean upholstery up to the seams. Do not rub forcefully.◀

Velcro fasteners on pants or other items of clothing can damage seat covers. Make sure that all Velcro fasteners are closed.◀

Leather/leather coverings*

The leather processed by the manufacturer of your MINI is a high-quality natural product. Light variations in the grain is one of the typical properties of natural leather.◀

Dust and road grit in the pores and folds of the leather have an abrasive effect, leading to increased wear and causing the leather surface to become brittle prematurely. Use a cloth or vacuum cleaner to remove dust on a regular basis.

Especially when the leather has a light color, it should be cleaned regularly since it tends to get heavily soiled.

Treat the leather twice a year using a leather lotion since dirt and grease will gradually attack the leather's protective layer.

Carpets/floor mats*

Keep floor mats, carpet, and other objects out of the movement range of the pedals; otherwise, they may inhibit the function of the pedals during driving.
Do not place additional floor mats onto an existing one or onto other objects.
Only use floor mats that have been approved for the vehicle and can be appropriately fastened. Make sure that the floor mats are securely fastened again after they have been removed, e.g. for cleaning.◀

Floor mats can be removed to be cleaned.

If the carpets are very dirty, clean with a microfiber cloth and water or an interior cleaner. When doing so, rub forward and back in the driving direction; otherwise, the carpet may become matted.

Interior plastic parts

These include:

- Plastic surfaces
- Lamp glass
- Display panes
- Mat parts

Only clean with water and, if necessary, solvent-free plastic cleaners.

Do not use solvents such as alcohol, lacquer thinner, cold cleaners, fuel, or similar, as these will damage the surfaces.◀

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

Decorative strips*

Only clean decorative strips with moist cloths. Wipe dry with a soft cloth.

Safety belts

Dirty belt straps impede the reeling action and thus have a negative impact on safety.

Do not clean chemically, as this may destroy the webbing.◀

Displays

To clean displays such as radios or display elements, use a display cleaning cloth or a soft, non-scratching, lint-free cloth.

Avoid pressing too hard when cleaning the display as this can cause damage.◀

Do not use chemical or abrasive household cleaning agents. Keep fluids of any kind away from the device. Surfaces or electrical components may otherwise become corroded or damaged.◀

CD/DVD drives

Do not use cleaning CDs as this could damage parts of the drive.◀

VEHICLE STORAGE

If you are not going to drive your car for more than three months, please ask for advice from your MINI dealer or a workshop that works according to MINI manufacturer specifications.

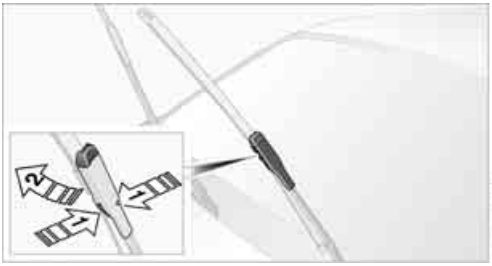
Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

REPLACING COMPONENTS

WIPER BLADES

Changing the front wiper blades

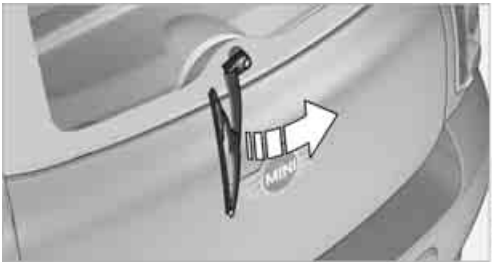
1. Fold out the wiper arm and hold it.



2. Press together the locking spring, arrows **1**, and fold out the wiper blade, arrow **2**.
3. Pull the wiper blade forward and out of the catch mechanism.
4. Press the new wiper blade into the fixture until it engages audibly.

To avoid damage, make sure that the wiper arms are against the windshield before you open the hood.◀

Changing the rear wiper blade



1. Fold out the wiper arm and hold it.
2. Rotate the wiper blade toward the back as far as it will go, arrow.
3. Press the wiper blade against the limit and thus out of the mounting.
4. Press the new wiper blade into the fixture until it engages audibly.

LAMPS AND BULBS

Lamps and bulbs make an essential contribution to vehicle safety. They should, therefore, be handled carefully. The manufacturer of your MINI recommends having your MINI dealer perform any work that you do not feel competent to perform yourself or that is not described here.

Never touch the glass of new bulbs with your bare fingers, as even minute amounts of contamination will burn into the bulb's surface and reduce its service life. Use a clean tissue, cloth or something similar, or hold the bulb by its base.◀

You can obtain a selection of replacement bulbs at your MINI dealer.

When working on electrical systems, always begin by switching off the consumer in question; otherwise, short circuits could result. To avoid possible injury or equipment damage when replacing bulbs, observe any instructions provided by the bulb manufacturer.◀

Caring for headlamps, refer to page 205.

For any bulb replacement not described below, contact a MINI dealer or a workshop that has specially trained personnel working in accordance with the specifications of the MINI manufacturer.◀

For checking and adjusting headlamp aim, please contact your MINI dealer.◀

Light-emitting diodes LEDs

Light-emitting diodes installed behind translucent lenses serve as the light sources for many of the controls and displays in your vehicle. These light-emitting diodes are related to conven-

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

tional laser diodes, and legislation defines them as Class 1 light-emitting diodes.

Do not remove the covers or expose the eyes directly to the unfiltered light source for several hours; otherwise, this could cause irritation of the retina.◀

Headlamp glass lens

In cool or humid weather, condensation may occur on the interior of outside lights. The condensation disappears a short time after the light is switched on. The headlamps do not need to be changed. If a lot of moisture is present, e.g. water droplets in the light, have them checked by your service center.

Xenon lamps*

The service life of these bulbs is very long and the probability of failure very low, provided that they are not switched on and off an excessive number of times. If a xenon lamp fails nevertheless, switch on the fog lamps and continue the journey with great care, provided that local legislation does not prohibit this.

Have any work on the xenon lamp system, including bulb replacement, carried out only by a MINI dealer or a workshop that has specially trained personnel working in accordance with the specifications of the MINI manufacturer. Due to high voltage, there is a risk of fatal injury if work on the xenon lamps is carried out improperly.◀

Halogen low beams and high beams

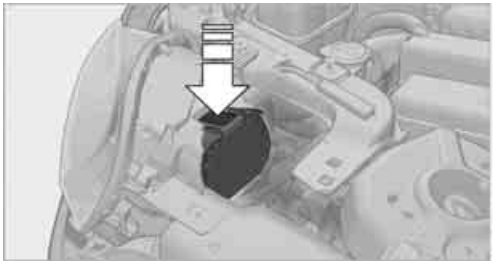
H13 bulb, 60/55 watts

The H13 bulb is pressurized. Therefore, wear safety glasses and protective gloves. Otherwise, there is a risk of injury if the bulb is damaged.◀

Be careful when installing the cover; otherwise, leaks could occur and cause damage to the headlamp system.◀

Accessing the lamp from the engine compartment

The low-beam/high-beam bulb can be changed from the engine compartment.



Removing the cover:

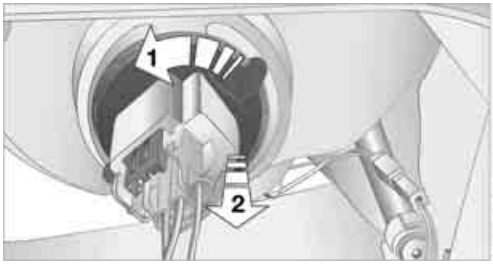
1. Press the tab.
2. Flip open the cover and take it out of the holder.

Follow the same steps in reverse order to reattach the cover.

Be careful when installing the cover; otherwise, leaks could occur and cause damage to the headlamp system.◀

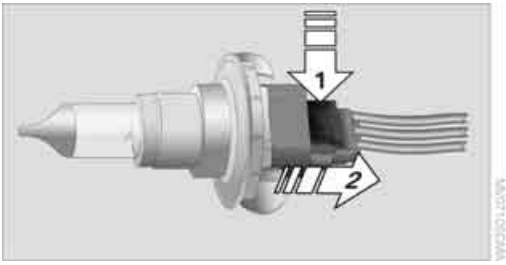
Replacing the bulb

1. Turn the lamp counterclockwise, arrow **1**, and remove it, arrow **2**.



Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

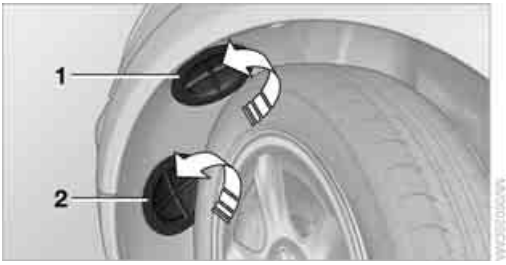
2. Push on the catch, arrow **1**, and disconnect the connector, arrow **2**.



3. To insert the new bulb and replace the cover, proceed in reverse order.

Turn signals, parking lamps, roadside parking lamps, and fog lamps

Accessing the lamps via the wheel well



1 Turn signal

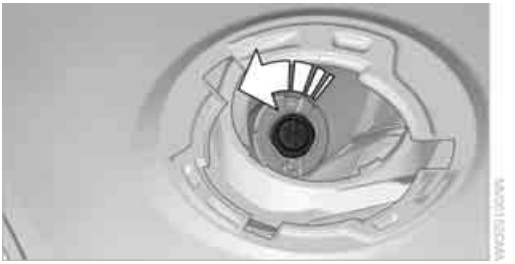
2 Parking/roadside parking/fog lamps

Replacing a turn signal bulb

21 watt bulb, P21W, if necessary PY 21 W

1. Turn in the wheel.
2. Remove cover **1**.
   To do so, turn the cover counterclockwise.
3. Remove the inside cover.
   To do so, turn the cover counterclockwise.

4. Unscrew the bulb counterclockwise.



5. To insert the new bulb and replace the covers, proceed in reverse order.

Replacing a parking/roadside parking lamp bulb

5 watt bulb, W 5 W

1. Turn in the wheel.
2. Remove cover **2**.
   To do so, turn the cover counterclockwise.
3. Unscrew the upper bulb counterclockwise.

4. To insert the new bulb and replace the cover, proceed in reverse order.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

Replacing a fog lamp bulb

H8 bulb, 35 watts

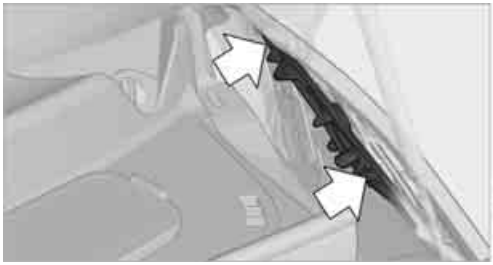
1. Turn in the wheel.
2. Remove cover **2**.
   To do so, turn the cover counterclockwise.
3. Pull the cable connector.
4. Unscrew the lower bulb counterclockwise.

5. To insert the new bulb and replace the cover, proceed in reverse order.

Side turn signals

5 watt bulb, W 5 W

1. Open hood.



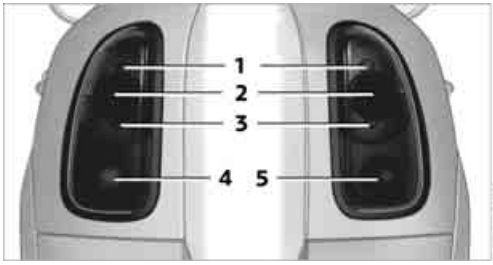
2. Squeeze clamping clip, arrows, and remove bulb holder.
3. Unscrew bulb counterclockwise and replace.
4. To insert the new bulb and replace the cover, proceed in reverse order.

Side marker lamps

Have these bulbs replaced by your MINI dealer.

Tail lamps

Bulb P 21 W



1 Brake/tail lamp
2 Turn signal
3 Brake/tail lamp
4 Backup lamps
5 Backup lamps

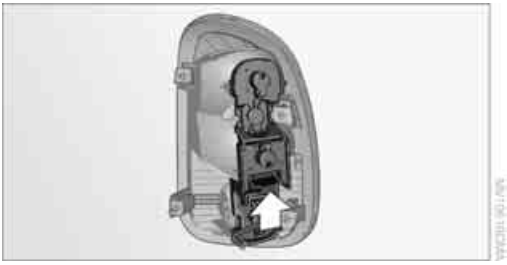
Changing

All bulbs are integrated in a central bulb holder.

1. Switch off the light and remove the infrared remote control from the ignition lock.
2. Push the cover panel out from the rear of the cargo area side trim panel and remove it.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

3. Disengage the bulb holder by pressing down on the clamping clip, arrow.



4. Remove bulb holder.
5. Apply gentle pressure to the bulb while turning it to the left for removal and replacement.
6. Re-engage the bulb holder so that it audibly clicks into place.
7. Replace the cover panel.

License plate lamps

5 watt bulb, C 5 W

1. Using a screwdriver, push the lamp to the left in the tab of the lamp housing, arrow **1**.
2. Remove the lamp, arrow **2**.
3. Replace the bulb.
4. Insert the lamp.

Center brake lamp

This lamp uses LED technology for operation. In the event of a malfunction, contact your MINI dealer or a workshop that has specially trained personnel working in accordance with the specifications of your MINI manufacturer.

REPAIRING A FLAT TIRE

▷ Safety measures in the event of a breakdown:
Park the vehicle as far as possible from moving traffic and switch on the hazard warning flashers.
Turn the steering wheel until the front wheels are in the straight-ahead position and engage the steering wheel lock. Engage the parking brake and shift into 1st or reverse gear or place the selector lever in position P.
All passengers should be outside the vehicle and in a safe place, e.g. behind a guardrail.
Erect a warning triangle or warning flasher at the appropriate distance if necessary. Comply with all safety guidelines and regulations.◀

In the event of a flat tire, different procedures should be followed depending on the equipment included in your vehicle:

▷ MINI Mobility System, refer to the following section

▷ Run-flat tires, page 196

MINI Mobility System*

The Mobility System is located under the left front seat.

Preparations

Use of the MINI Mobility System may be ineffective if the tire puncture measures approx. 1/8 in/ 4 mm or more. Contact the nearest MINI dealer if the tire cannot be made drivable with the Mobility System.

Do not remove foreign bodies which have penetrated the tire if possible.

▷ Follow the instructions on using the Mobility System found on the compressor and the sealant bottle.◀

Remove the adhesive label for the speed limit from the sealant bottle and affix it to the steering wheel.

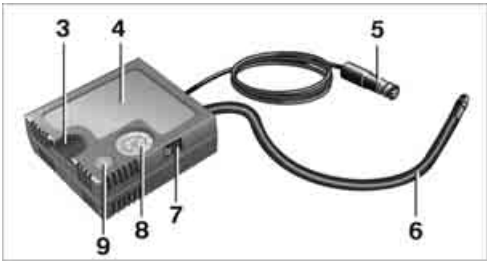
Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

Sealant and compressor

1 Sealant bottle and adhesive label with speed limit

2 Filling hose

Note the use-by date on the sealant bottle.◀



3 Holder for the sealant bottle

4 Compressor

5 Plug and cable for the socket in the vehicle interior, page 92

6 Connection hose to connect the compressor and sealant bottle or the compressor and wheel

7 On/off switch

8 Pressure gauge for indicating the tire inflation pressure

9 Release button for reducing the tire inflation pressure

Connector, cable and connection hose are stored in the compressor housing.

Using the Mobility System

To repair a tire puncture with the Mobility System, proceed as follows:

▷ Filling the tire with sealant

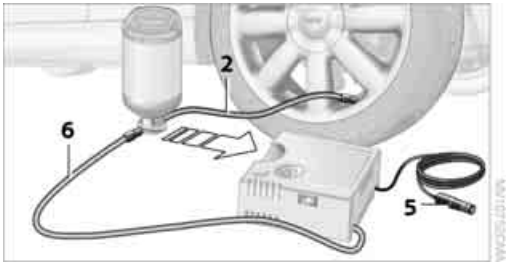
▷ Distributing the sealant

▷ Correct the tire inflation pressure

Filling the tire with sealant

Proceed in the specified order; otherwise, sealant may emerge under high pressure.◀

1. Shake the sealant bottle.
2. Pull the connecting hose **6** completely out of the compressor housing and screw it onto the connector of the sealant bottle. Make sure that the hose is not kinked.
3. Insert the sealant bottle on the compressor housing in an upright position.



4. Unscrew the dust cap from the valve of the defective wheel and screw the filling hose **2** of the sealant bottle onto the valve.
5. Ensure that the compressor is switched off.
6. Insert the plug **5** into the lighter socket/power socket in the vehicle interior, page 92.
7. With the engine running:
   Switch on the compressor and let it run for approx. 3 to 8 minutes to fill the tire with sealant and achieve a tire inflation pressure of approx. 26 psi/180 kPa.

   When filling with the sealant, the inflation pressure can briefly rise to approx. 73 psi/500 kPa. Do not switch off the compressor during this phase.◀

   Do not run the compressor for longer than 10 minutes; otherwise, the

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

device will overheat and possibly be damaged.◀

8. Switch off the compressor.

If an air pressure of 26 psi/180 kPa is not reached:

1. Unscrew the filling hose **2** from the wheel and drive the vehicle forward and backward approx. 33 ft/10 m to distribute the liquid sealant in the tire evenly.
2. Inflate the tire again with the compressor.

If an inflation pressure of 26 psi/180 kPa still cannot be reached, the tire is too heavily damaged. Please contact the nearest MINI dealer.◀

Stowing Mobility System

1. Unscrew filler hose **2** of the sealant bottle from the wheel.
2. Unscrew connecting hose of the compressor **6** from the sealant bottle.
3. Connect the filler hose **2** of the sealant bottle to the unoccupied connection on the sealant bottle.
   This prevents the rest of the sealant from escaping from the bottle.
4. Wrap the empty sealant bottle in suitable material to avoid dirtying the cargo area.
5. Stow Mobility System back in the vehicle.

Distributing the sealant

Immediately drive approx. 3 miles/5 km so that the sealant evenly distributes itself.

Do not exceed speeds of 50 mph/80 km/h.
If possible, do not drop below 10 mph/20 km/h.◀

Correct the tire inflation pressure

1. After driving approx. 3 miles/5 km or ten minutes, stop at a suitable location.
2. Screw the connection hose **6** of the compressor directly onto the tire valve.
3. Insert the plug **5** into the power socket in the vehicle interior.
4. Correct inflation pressure to 26 psi/180 kPa. With the engine running:

▷ To increase the inflation pressure: switch on the compressor. To check the current inflation pressure, switch off the compressor.

Do not run the compressor for longer than 10 minutes; otherwise, the device will overheat and possibly be damaged.◀

▷ To decrease the inflation pressure: press the release button **9**.

If the tire cannot maintain the inflation pressure, drive the vehicle again, refer to Distributing the sealant. Then repeat steps 1 to 4.
If an inflation pressure of 26 psi/180 kPa still cannot be reached, the tire is too heavily damaged. Contact the nearest MINI dealer.◀

Driving on

Do not exceed the permitted maximum speed of 50 mph/80 km/h; doing so may result in an accident.◀

Replace the defective tire as soon as possible and have the new wheel/tire assembly balanced.

Have the Mobility System refilled.

CHANGING WHEELS

The pouch with the wheel changing kit* is stored under the flat load floor*. It includes:

▷ Vehicle jack
▷ Reversible ratchet
▷ Wheel stud wrench
▷ Extractor hook for wheel center cover
▷ Chock

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

Preparing for a wheel change

Observe the safety precautions regarding flat tires on page 212.◀

Additional safety measures when changing tires:
Only change the tire when parked on a surface that is level, firm and not slippery.
The vehicle or the jack could slip sideways on soft or slippery support surfaces, such as snow, ice, flagstones, etc.
Do not use a wooden block or similar object as a support base for the jack, as this would prevent it from extending to its full support height and reduce its load-carrying capacity.
Do not lie under the vehicle or start the engine when the vehicle is supported by the jack; otherwise, there is a risk of fatal injury.◀

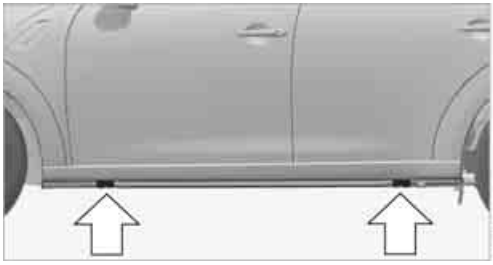
1. Place the foldable chock* behind the front wheel on the other side of the vehicle or in front of the wheel if the vehicle is on an incline. If the wheel is changed on a surface with a more severe slope, take additional precautions to secure the vehicle from rolling.
2. Uncover the lug bolts if necessary.
3. Loosen the lug bolts by a half turn.

Jacking up the vehicle

The vehicle jack is designed for changing wheels only. Do not attempt to raise another vehicle model with it or to raise any load of any kind. To do so could cause accidents and personal injury.◀

1. Place the jack at the jacking point closest to the wheel.

The jack base must be perpendicular to the surface beneath the jacking point.



2. Slide reversible ratchet onto the fixture on the jack, arrow **1**.

3. As you ratchet up the jack, place the jack head onto the lifting point on the body, arrow **2**.
4. Jack the vehicle up until the wheel you are changing is raised off the ground.

Mounting the wheel

1. Unscrew the lug bolts and remove the wheel.
2. Remove accumulations of mud or dirt from the mounting surfaces of the wheel and hub. Clean the lug bolts.
3. Lift the new wheel into place.
4. Screw at least two lug bolts finger-tight into opposite bolt holes.
5. Screw in the remaining bolts.
6. Tighten all the lug bolts firmly in a diagonal pattern.
7. Lower the vehicle.
8. Remove the jack.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

Tightening the lug bolts

Tighten the lug bolts in a diagonal pattern.

Immediately have the wheels checked with a calibrated torque wrench to ensure that the lug bolts are firmly seated. Otherwise, incorrectly tightened lug bolts can present a safety hazard.◀

Tightening torque: 103.3 lb ft or 140 Nm.

Replace the defective tire as soon as possible and have the new wheel/tire assembly balanced.

VEHICLE BATTERY

Maintenance

The battery is 100% maintenance-free, the electrolyte will last for the life of the battery when the vehicle is operated in a temperate climate.

Battery replacement

Only use vehicle batteries that have been approved for your vehicle by the manufacturer; otherwise, the vehicle could be damaged and systems or functions may not be fully available.◀

After a battery replacement, have the battery registered on the vehicle by your dealer to ensure that all comfort functions are fully available.

Charging the battery

Only charge the battery in the vehicle when the engine is off. Connections, refer to Jump-starting on page 218.

Disposal

After replacing old batteries, return the used batteries to your MINI dealer or to a recycling center. Maintain the battery in an upright position for transport and storage. Always secure the battery against tipping over during transport.◀

Power failure

After a temporary power loss, some equipment may not be fully functional and may require initialization. Individual settings are also lost and must be reprogrammed:

- ▷ Time and date
  These values must be updated, page 61.
- ▷ Radio
  In some cases, stations may have to be stored again, page 132.
- ▷ Navigation system
  Operability must be waited for, page 108.
- ▷ Glass sunroof*, electric
  It may only be possible to tilt the sunroof, if applicable. The system must be initialized. Contact your nearest MINI dealer.

FUSES

Do not attempt to repair a blown fuse or replace it with a fuse of a different color or Ampere rating. To do this could cause a fire in the vehicle resulting from a circuit overload. Have the fuse changed only by a MINI dealer or a workshop that has specially trained personnel working in accordance with the specifications of the MINI manufacturer.◀

A fuse allocation diagram is located on the inside of the fuse box cover panels.

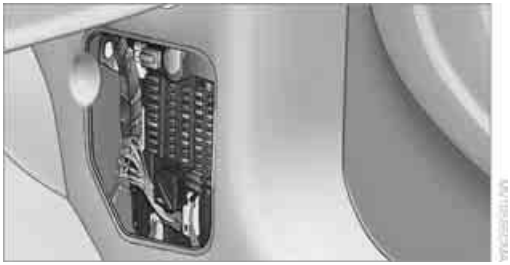
In the engine compartment

Opening the cover

Press the latch.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

In the vehicle interior



On the right side of the footwell.

Opening the cover

Press out at the recess.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

GIVING AND RECEIVING ASSISTANCE

ROADSIDE ASSISTANCE

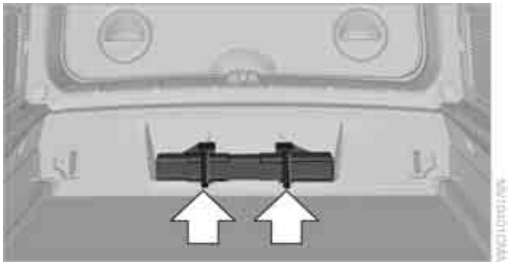
Roadside Assistance is available by phone 24 hours a day in many countries. You can obtain assistance there in the event of a vehicle breakdown.

FIRST AID POUCH*

Some of the articles contained in the first aid pouch have a limited service life. Therefore, check the expiration dates of the contents regularly and replace any items in good time, if necessary.

The first aid pouch is located on the rear cargo well by the left side trim panel or under the pull-out floor panel.

WARNING TRIANGLE*



In the cargo area under the loading sill.

To remove, open the two clasps.

JUMP-STARTING

If the car's own battery is flat, your MINI's engine can be started by connecting two jumper cables to another vehicle's battery. You can also use the same method to help start another vehicle. Only use jumper cables with fully-insulated clamp handles.

⚠ Do not touch any electrically live parts when the engine is running, or a fatal accident may occur. Carefully adhere to the following sequence, both to prevent damage to one or both vehicles, and to guard against possible personal injuries.◀

Preparation

1. Check whether the battery of the other vehicle has a voltage of 12 volts and approximately the same capacitance in Ah. This information can be found on the battery.
2. Switch off the engine of the support vehicle.
3. Switch off any consumers in both vehicles.

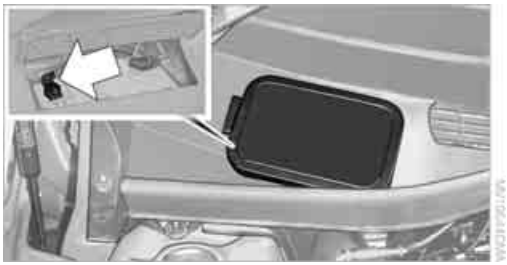
⚠ There must not be any contact between the bodies of the two vehicles; otherwise, there is a danger of shorting.◀

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

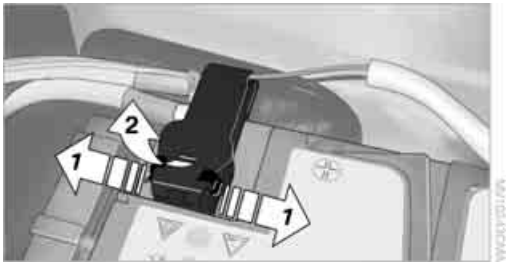
Connecting jumper cables

Connect the jumper cables in the correct order, so that no sparks which could cause injury occur.◀

1. Open the battery cover in the engine compartment to access the positive terminal of your MINI.



2. Release the tabs on the left and right sides of the positive terminal cover*, arrows **1**, and lift the cover to open, arrow **2**.



3. Attach one terminal clamp of the plus/+ jumper cable to the positive terminal of the battery or to a starting-aid terminal of the vehicle providing assistance.
4. Attach the second terminal clamp of the plus/+ jumper cable to the positive terminal of the battery or a starting-aid terminal of the vehicle to be started.
5. Attach one terminal clamp of the minus/– jumper cable to the negative terminal of the battery or to an engine or body ground of the assisting vehicle.

Body ground in MINI:

6. Attach the second terminal clamp of the minus/– jumper cable to the negative terminal of the battery or to the engine or body ground of the vehicle to be started.

Starting the engine

1. Start the engine of the donor vehicle and allow it to run for a few minutes at slightly increased idle speed.
2. Start the engine of the other vehicle in the usual manner.
   If the first start attempt is not successful, wait a few minutes before another attempt in order to allow the discharged battery to recharge.
3. Let the engines run for a few minutes.
4. Disconnect the jumper cables by reversing the above connecting sequence.

If necessary, have the battery checked and recharged.

Never use spray fluids to start the engine.◀

TOW-STARTING, TOWING AWAY

Observe applicable laws and regulations for tow-starting and towing.◀

Do not transport any passengers other than the driver in a vehicle that is being towed.◀

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

Using a tow fitting

The screw-in tow fitting must always be carried in the car. It can be screwed in at the front or at the right rear.

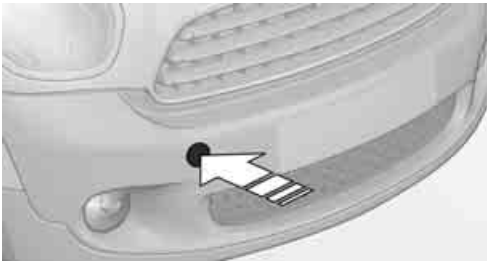
The tow fitting can be found under the right front seat or in the pocket of the tire changing set * in the cargo area.

Use only the tow fitting provided with the vehicle and screw it all the way in. Use the tow fitting for towing on paved roads only. Avoid lateral loading of the tow fitting, e.g. do not lift the vehicle by the tow fitting. Otherwise, the tow fitting and the vehicle could be damaged.◀

Access to screw thread

Press the lower part of the cover. This will push out the upper edge of the cover, which can then be removed.

Front



Rear

Being towed

Make sure that the ignition is switched on, refer to page 46; otherwise, the low beams, tail lamps, turn signals, and windshield wipers may be unavailable. Do not tow the vehicle with just the rear axle raised, as this would allow the steering to turn.◀

There is no power assist while the engine is off. Thus, braking and steering will require increased effort.

Switch on the hazard warning flashers, depending on local regulations.

Manual transmission

Gearshift lever in neutral position.

Automatic transmission

Tow vehicles with automatic transmission only with a tow truck or with the front wheels lifted; otherwise, the transmission can be damaged.◀

Towing methods

Do not lift vehicle by tow fitting or body and chassis parts, otherwise damage may result.◀

With towbar

The towing vehicle must not be lighter than the towed vehicle; otherwise, it may be impossible to maintain control.◀

The tow fittings used should be on the same side on both vehicles. Should it prove impossible to avoid mounting the tow bar at an angle, please observe the following:

- ▷ Clearance and maneuvering capability will be sharply limited during cornering.
- ▷ The tow bar will generate lateral forces if it is attached offset.

Attach the tow bar to the tow fittings only, as attaching it to other parts of the vehicle could result in damage.◀

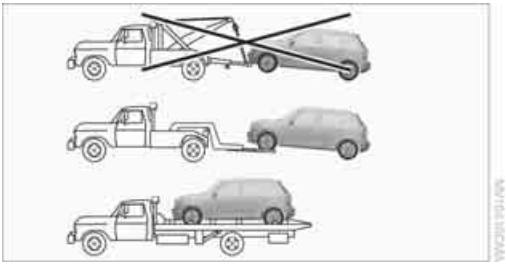
Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

With tow rope

When starting off in the towing vehicle, make sure that the tow rope is taut.

To avoid jerking and the associated stresses on vehicle components when towing, always use nylon ropes or nylon straps. Attach the tow rope to the tow fittings only, as attaching it to other parts of the vehicle could result in damage.◀

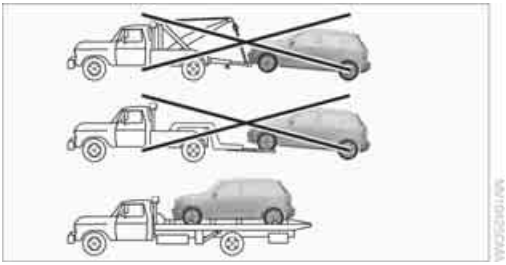
With tow truck: vehicles without ALL4 all-wheel drive



Have the MINI Countryman transported by a tow truck with a so-called lift bar or on a flat bed.

With tow truck: vehicles with ALL4 all-wheel drive

Do not have your vehicle with ALL4 all-wheel drive towed with the front or rear axle raised individually; otherwise, the wheels may lock and the transfer case may be damaged.◀



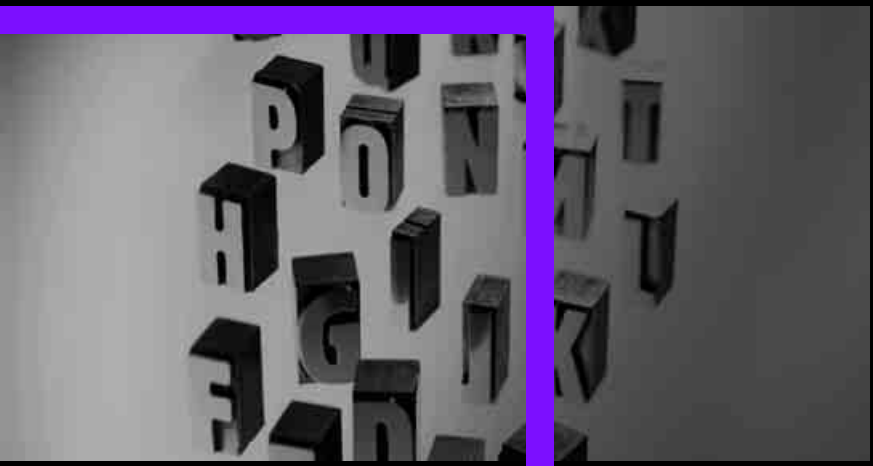
Only have your MINI Countryman transported on a flat bed.

Tow-starting

Avoid tow-starting the vehicle whenever possible; instead, jump-start the engine, page 218. Vehicles with a catalytic converter should only be tow-started when the engine is cold, vehicles with an automatic transmission cannot be tow-started at all.

1. Switch on hazard warning flashers, comply with local regulations.
2. Switch on the ignition, page 46.
3. Shift into 3rd gear.
4. Have the vehicle tow-started with the clutch completely depressed and then slowly release the clutch. After the engine starts, immediately depress the clutch completely again.
5. Stop at a suitable location, remove the tow bar or rope and switch off the hazard warning flashers.
6. Have the vehicle checked.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG



FIND ME.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

AT A GLANCE

CONTROLS

DRIVING TIPS

NAVIGATION

ENTERTAINMENT

COMMUNICATIONS

MOBILITY

REFERENCE

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

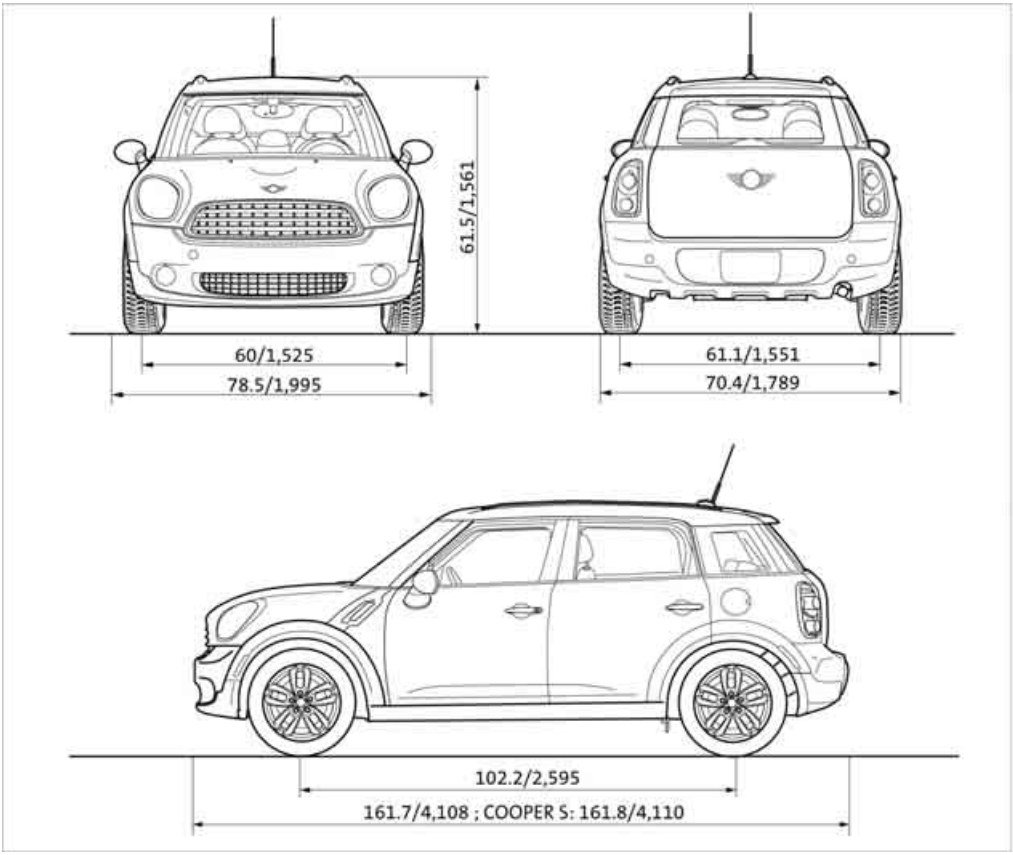
TECHNICAL DATA

ENGINE DATA

		Cooper	Cooper S
Displacement	cu in/cm³	97.5/1,598	97.5/1,598
Number of cylinders		4	4
Maximum power output	hp	121	181
At engine speed	rpm	6,000	5,500
Maximum torque with overboost	lb ft/Nm	114/155 –	177/240 192/260
At engine speed with overboost	rpm	4,250 –	1,600-5,000 1,700-4,500
Overboost briefly raises the maximum torque at high rates of acceleration, e.g. when passing.			

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

DIMENSIONS



All dimensions in inches/mm. Minimum turning radius dia.: 38.1 ft/11.6 m.
Information after the semicolon: different values for MINI Cooper S.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

WEIGHTS

		Cooper	Cooper S	Cooper S ALL4
Curb weight, ready for travel, with all optional extras				
▷ Manual transmission	lbs./kg	2,954/1,340	3,053/1,385	3,208/1,455
▷ Automatic transmission	lbs./kg	3,020/1,370	3,097/1,405	3,252/1,475
Approved gross weight				
▷ Manual transmission	lbs./kg	3,858/1,750	3,990/1,810	4,101/1,860
▷ Automatic transmission	lbs./kg	3,924/1,780	4,034/1,830	4,145/1,880
Approved front axle load				
▷ Manual transmission	lbs./kg	2,028/920	2,105/955	2,161/980
▷ Automatic transmission	lbs./kg	2,094/950	2,150/975	2,205/1,000
Approved rear axle load	lbs./kg	1,918/870	1,918/870	2,017/915
Approved roof load capacity	lbs./kg	165/75	165/75	165/75
Cargo area capacity	cu ft/ liters	12.4 - 41.3/ 350 - 1,170	12.4 - 41.3/ 350 - 1,170	12.4 - 41.3/ 350 - 1,170

Never exceed either the approved axle loads or the gross vehicle weight.

CAPACITIES

	US gal/US quarts	Liters	Notes
Fuel tank	12.4/–	approx. 47	Fuel grade: page 189
Including reserve of	2.1/–	approx. 8	
Window washer system incl. headlamp washer system	–/4.2	approx. 4	For more details: page 53

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

SHORT COMMANDS FOR THE VOICE ACTIVATION SYSTEM*

GENERAL INFORMATION

Instructions for the voice activation system, refer to page 21.

Having the possible spoken commands read aloud: ›Voice commands‹

The following short commands apply to vehicles with voice activation systems. They do not work for equipment with which only the mobile phone can be operated by voice.

USEFUL SHORT COMMANDS

Function	Command
Accessing tone control	›Tone‹
Accessing settings	›Settings‹
Accessing the computer	›Onboard info‹
Accessing contacts*	›Contacts‹
Displaying the phone book*	›Phonebook‹
Accessing services*	›Assist‹
Selecting destination entry*	›Enter address‹
Accessing route guidance*	›Guidance‹

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

CD/MULTIMEDIA

CD drive

Function	Command
Playing a CD	›C D on‹
Selecting a CD	›Select C D‹
Selecting a CD and track	›C D … track …‹ e.g. CD 3 track 5
Selecting a track	›C D track …‹ e.g. track 5
Opening the CD and Multimedia menu	›C D and multimedia‹
CD	›C D‹

External devices

Function	Command
Selecting external devices	›External devices‹

Tone control

Function	Command
Accessing tone control	›Tone‹

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

RADIO

FM

Function	Command
Selecting the radio	›Radio‹
Selecting FM stations	›F M‹
Selecting manual search	›Manual‹
Selecting the frequency range	›Select frequency‹
Selecting a station	›Select station‹ e.g. W-PLJ

AM

Function	Command
Selecting AM stations	›A M‹
Selecting manual search	›Manual‹

Satellite radio

Function	Command
Selecting the satellite radio	›Satellite radio‹
Switching on the satellite radio	›Satellite radio on‹
Selecting a satellite radio channel	›Select satellite radio‹ e.g. channel 2

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

Stored stations

Function	Command
Selecting stored stations	›Presets‹
Choosing a stored station	›Select preset‹
Selecting a stored station	›Preset …‹ e.g. stored station 2

TELEPHONE

Function	Command
Opening the Telephone menu	›Telephone‹
To display phone book	›Phonebook‹
To redial	›Redial‹
Displaying accepted calls	›Received calls‹
Dialing a phone number	›Dial number‹
Displaying the list of messages	›Messages‹
Displaying Bluetooth devices	›Bluetooth‹

OFFICE*

Function	Command
Calling up the Office menu	›Office‹
Displaying Current office	›Current office‹
Displaying contacts	›Contacts‹

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

Function	Command
Displaying messages	›Messages‹
Displaying calendar	›Calendar‹
Displaying tasks	›Tasks‹
Displaying reminders	›Reminders‹

Contacts*

Function	Command
Accessing contacts	›Contacts‹
My contacts	›My contacts‹
New contact	›New contact‹

NAVIGATION

General information

Function	Command
Navigation menu	›Navigation‹
Selecting destination entry	›Enter address‹
Entering an address	›Enter address‹
Selecting route guidance	›Guidance‹
Starting route guidance	›Start guidance‹
Ending route guidance	›Stop guidance‹
Retrieving home address	›Home address‹

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

Function	Command
Selecting route criteria	›Route preference‹
Selecting route	›Route information‹
Switching on the voice instructions	›Switch on voice instructions‹
Repeating a voice instruction	›Repeat voice instructions‹
Switching off the voice instructions	›Switch off voice instructions‹
Displaying the address book	›Address book‹
Displaying the last destinations	›Last destinations‹
Accessing traffic bulletins	›Traffic Info‹
Special destinations	›Points of interest‹

Map

Function	Command
Displaying the map	›Map‹
Map facing north	›Map facing north‹
Map in the direction of travel	›Map in direction of travel‹
Perspective map	›Map perspective view‹
Automatic scaling of the map*	›Map with automatic scaling‹
Changing the scale	›Map scale‹

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

Route guidance with intermediate destinations

Function	Command
Entering a new destination	›Enter address‹

VEHICLE INFORMATION

Function	Command
Accessing the computer	›Onboard info‹
Accessing the trip computer	›Trip computer‹
Accessing vehicle information	›Vehicle info‹
Accessing vehicle status	›Vehicle status‹

SETTINGS

Vehicle

Function	Command
Opening the main menu	›Main menu‹
Accessing settings	›Settings‹
Accessing options	›Options‹
Settings on the Control Display	›Control display‹
Accessing time and date settings	›Time and date‹
Accessing language and unit settings	›Language and units‹

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

Function	Command
Accessing speed limit settings	›Speed‹
Activating lighting	›Lighting‹
Selecting the door lock	›Door locks‹

Equipment*

Function	Command
Selecting the air conditioning	›Climate‹

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

EVERYTHING FROM A TO Z

INDEX

A

ABS Antilock Brake System 67
Accessories, refer to Your individual vehicle 4
Acknowledgment signals for locking/unlocking vehicle 28
Activated-charcoal filter for automatic climate control 87
Adaptive Light Control 80
Additives
– coolant 200
– engine oil 200
Address, entering 115
Address for navigation
– entering 109, 115
Adjusting temperature inside the car, refer to Air conditioner 84
Adjusting temperature inside the car, refer to Automatic climate control 85
Adjusting the tone during audio operation, refer to Tone control 131
Air conditioner 83
Air conditioning mode
– air conditioner 84
– automatic climate control 85
– ventilation 87
Air distribution
– automatic 86
– individual 85
– manual 85
Air flow rate 84, 86
– air conditioning system 84
– automatic climate control 86
– heating, ventilation 84
Air outlets, refer to Air vents 83
Air pressure, checking, refer to Tire inflation pressure 190
Air recirculation, refer to Recirculated-air mode 84, 86
Air supply
– air conditioner 84
– automatic climate control 85
– ventilation 87
Air vents 83
Airbags 76
– sitting safely 37
– warning lamp 78
Airing, refer to Ventilation 87
AKI, refer to Fuel grade 189
Alarm system 31
ALL4 all-wheel drive system 69
All-season tires, refer to Winter tires 197
All-wheel drive, refer to ALL4 69
AM, waveband 132
Ambient air, refer to Recirculated-air mode 84, 86
Ambient lighting 82
Antenna, care 204
Antifreeze
– coolant 200
– washer fluid 53
Antilock Brake System ABS 67
Anti-theft alarm system, refer to Alarm system 31
Approved axle loads, refer to Weights 226
Approved engine oils 200
Approved gross vehicle weight, refer to Weights 226
Armrest, refer to Center armrest 91
Arrival time
– computer 57
– route guidance 118
Ashtray 92
Assistant systems, refer to
– Dynamic Stability Control DSC 67
Audio 130
– controls 130
– switching on/off 130
– tone control 131
– volume 130
Audio device, external 90
AUTO program for automatic climate control 86
Automatic
– air distribution 86
– air flow rate 86
– cruise control 53
– headlamp control 79
Automatic climate control 83
– automatic air distribution 86
Automatic transmission with Steptronic 48
– interlock 48
– overriding selector lever lock 50
– shiftlock 48
– sport program 49
Auxiliary phone 164
AUX-IN connection 142
AUX-IN, refer to External audio device 90
Average fuel consumption 56
– setting the units 58
Average speed 56
Avoiding highways for navigation 118
Axle loads, refer to Weights 226

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

B

Background lighting, refer to Ambient lighting 82
Backrests, refer to Seats 38
Backup lamps
– replacing bulb 211
Band-aids, refer to First aid pouch 218
Bar, refer to Tow-starting, towing away 220
Base plate for telephone or mobile phone
– refer to Snap-in adapter 174
Bass sounds, refer to Tone control 131
Battery 216
– charging 216
– disposal 34, 216
– jump-starting 218
– temporary power failure 216
Battery renewal
– remote control 34
Being towed 220
Belt tensioner, refer to Safety belts 40
Belts, refer to Safety belts 40
Beverage holders, refer to Cupholders 92
Black ice, refer to External temperature warning 56
Blower, refer to Air flow rate 84, 86
Bluetooth, activating/deactivating 154, 164
Bluetooth audio 146
– device pairing 146
– disconnecting an audio connection 148
– playback 147
– unpairing device 148
– What to do if... 148
Bottle holders, refer to Cupholders 92
Brake Assist 67
Brake fluid, refer to Service requirements 59
Brake lamps
– replacing bulbs 211
Brake pads, breaking in 96
Brake rotors 97
– brakes 96
– breaking in 96
Brake system 96
– breaking in 96
– disc brakes 97
– MINI Maintenance System 202
Brakes
– ABS 67
– breaking in 96
– MINI Maintenance System 202
– parking brake 47
– service requirements 59
Brakes, refer to Braking safely 97
Breakdown service, refer to Roadside Assistance 218
Break-in period 96
Breaking in the clutch 96
Brightness of Control Display 65
Bulb changing, refer to Lamps and bulbs 208
Button for starting the engine 46
Buttons on the steering wheel 11

C

Calendar 179
– displaying appointment 180
– selecting calendar day 180
California Proposition 65 warning 5
Call
– accepting 157, 168
– ending 157, 168
– muting the microphone 158, 170
– rejecting 157, 168
Calling, refer to Phone numbers, dialing 157, 169
Can holders, refer to Cupholders 92
Capacities 226
Car battery, refer to Vehicle battery 216
Car care 204
Car key, refer to Keys/remote controls 26
Car phone
– installation location, refer to Center armrest 91
Car phone, refer to Telephone 154, 163
Car radio, refer to Radio 132
Car wash
– before driving in 47
Car wash, care 204
Car washes 204
Care 204
– car washes 204
– car-care products 204
– CD/DVD drives 207
– external 204
– high-pressure washers 205
– internal 206
– leather 206
– manual washing 205
– upholstery and fabrics 206
– windows 205
– wiper blades 205
Cargo area 98
– capacity 226
– Comfort Access 33
– lamp 82
– opening from outside 30
– trunk lid, refer to Liftgate 30
Cargo area, expanding 98
Cargo area lamp 82
Cargo area lid, refer to Liftgate 30
Cargo area partition net, refer to Cargo net 100

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

Cargo loading 101
– securing cargo 102
– stowing cargo 102
– vehicle 98
Cargo net 100
Cargo, securing 102
Carpets, care 206
Catalytic converter, refer to Hot exhaust system 96
CD, audio playback 140
CD player 140
– controls 130
– fast forward/reverse 141
– random order 141
– selecting a track 140
– switching on/off 130
– tone control 131
– volume 130
Center armrest 91
Center brake lamp 212
Center console, refer to Around the center console 14
Center Rail 91
Center Rail, refer to Storage compartments 91
Central locking system 27
– Comfort Access 32
– from inside 30
– from outside 27
– setting unlocking behavior 27
Changing bulbs 208
Changing the language on the Control Display 65
Changing the measurement units on the Control Display 58
Changing wheels 214
Chassis number, refer to Engine compartment 199
Check Control 62
Child restraint fixing system LATCH 44
Child restraint systems 43
Child seats 43
Child-safety locks 45
Chrome parts, care 206
Chrome parts, refer to Care 204
Cigarette lighter 92
Cleaning headlamps 52
– washer fluid 53
Clock
– 12 h/24 h mode 61
– setting time 61
Closing
– from inside 30
– from outside 27
Clothes hooks 92
Cockpit 10
Cold start, refer to Starting the engine 46
Comfort Access 32
– replacing the battery 34
– what to observe before entering a car wash 34
Comfort area, refer to Around the center console 14
Compartment for remote control, refer to Ignition lock 46
Computer 56
– displays on Control Display 57
Condensation, refer to When the vehicle is parked 98
Condition Based Service CBS 202
Configuring settings, refer to Personal Profile 26
Connecting vacuum cleaner, refer to Connecting electrical appliances 92
Consumption, refer to Average fuel consumption 56
Contacts 161, 176
– deleting 162, 179
– displaying 162
– editing 162
– exporting/importing 179
– new contact 178
Control Display
– adjusting brightness 65
Control Display, refer to iDrive
– switching on/off 19
Control Display, refer to On-board computer
– adjusting brightness 65
Control Display, refer to On-board computer 16
Control stick, refer to On-board computer 16
Control unit, refer to On-board computer 16
Controls and displays 10
Convenient access, refer to Comfort Access 32
Convenient operation
– windows 28
Convenient start, refer to Starting the engine 46
Coolant 200
– checking level 201
– filling 201
– temperature 201
Coolant temperature 201
Cooling fluid, refer to Coolant 200
Cooling, maximum 86
Copyright 2
Cornering light, refer to Adaptive Light Control 80
Criteria for route 118
Cruise control
– indicator lamp 13
Cruising range 56
Cupholders 92
Curb weight, refer to Weights 226
Current fuel consumption 56
Current playback
– external devices 145

D

Dashboard instruments, refer to Displays 12
Dashboard lighting, refer to Instrument lighting 81
Dashboard, refer to Cockpit 10

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

Data 224
– capacities 226
– dimensions 225
– engine 224
– weights 226
Data memory 203
Date
– setting 62
– setting format 62
Daytime running lights 80
DBC Dynamic Brake Control, refer to Brake Assist 67
Deactivating front passenger airbags 76
Deadlocking, refer to Locking 28
Defect
– door lock 29
– fuel filler flap 188
Defining a home address 178
Defogging windows 85, 87
Defrost position, refer to Defrosting windows 85, 87
Defrosting windows 85, 87
Defrosting windows and removing condensation
– air conditioner 85
– automatic climate control 87
Defrosting windshield, refer to Defrosting windows 85, 87
Destination address
– entering 109, 115
Destination for navigation
– entering 109
– entering via map 114
Differential, breaking in 96
Digital radio, refer to HD Radio 133
Dimensions 225
Dipstick, engine oil 199
Direction announcements, refer to Voice instructions 122
Direction instructions, refer to Voice instructions 122
Directional indicators, refer to Turn signals 50
Directory for navigation, refer to Address book 111
Displacement, refer to Engine data 224
Display lighting, refer to Instrument lighting 81
Display, refer to On-board computer controls 16
Displaying contact pictures 178
Displaying special destinations 114
Displays 12
– instrument cluster 12
– on the Control Display 16
Displays and controls 10
Displays, care 207
Disposal
– of coolant 200
– remote control battery 34
– vehicle battery 216
Distance, refer to Computer 57
Distance remaining to service, refer to Service requirements 59
Distance to destination, refer to Computer 57
Distance warning, refer to Park Distance Control PDC 66
Door key, refer to Integrated key/remote control 26
Door lock 29
Door lock, confirmation signals 28
Doors, manual operation 29
DOT Quality Grades 194
Drinks holders, refer to Cupholders 92
Drive-off assistant, refer to Hill Assist 69
Driving dynamics control, refer to Sport button 69
Driving lamps, refer to Parking lamps/low beams 79
Driving notes 96
Driving off on inclines, refer to Hill Assist 69
Driving stability control systems 67
Driving through water 97
Driving tips, refer to Driving notes 96
Dry air, refer to Cooling function 87
DSC Dynamic Stability Control 67
DTC Dynamic Traction Control 68
Dynamic Brake Control DBC, refer to Brake Assist 67
Dynamic route guidance 125
Dynamic Stability Control DSC 67
Dynamic Traction Control DTC 68

E

Eject button, refer to Buttons on the CD player 130
Electrical malfunction
– door lock 29
– fuel filler flap 188
Electronic brake-force distribution 67
Electronic Stability Program ESP, refer to Dynamic Stability Control DSC 67
Emergency operation, refer to Manual operation
– door lock 29
– fuel filler flap 188
– transmission lock, automatic transmission 50
Emergency services, refer to Roadside Assistance 218

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

Engine
– breaking in 96
– data 224
– overheated, refer to Coolant temperature 201
– speed 224
– starting 46
– starting, Comfort Access 32
– switching off 47
Engine compartment 199
Engine coolant, refer to Coolant 200
Engine malfunction
– indicator lamp 13
Engine oil
– adding 200
– additives, refer to Approved engine oils 200
– alternative oil types 200
– approved engine oils 200
– capacity 200
– checking level 199
– dipstick 199
– intervals between changes, refer to Service requirements 59
– MINI Maintenance System 202
Engine oil level, checking 199
Engine output, refer to Engine data 224
Engine starting, refer to Starting the engine 46
Entering destination 109
Entering intersection 110
Entertainment sound output on/off 130
Entry map for destination 114
ESP Electronic Stability Program, refer to Dynamic Stability Control DSC 67
Exhaust system, refer to Hot exhaust system 96
Exterior mirrors 41
– adjusting 41
– automatic dimming feature 42
– automatic heating 41
– folding in and out 41
External audio device 90
External audio device, refer to AUX-IN connection 142
External devices
– random play sequence 145
– software update 149
External temperature display
– change units of measure 58
– in the on-board computer 58
External temperature warning 56
Eyes
– for tow-starting and towing away 220
– for tying down loads 102

F

Failure messages, refer to Check Control 62
Failure of an electrical consumer 216
Fast forward
– CD player 141
Fastening safety belts, refer to Safety belts 40
Fastest route for navigation 118
Fault messages, refer to Check Control 62
Faulty
– tire 71
Filter
– microfilter for air conditioner 85
– microfilter/activated-charcoal filter for automatic climate control 87
Fine wood, care 207
First aid pouch 218
Fixture for remote control, refer to Ignition lock 46
Flash when locking/unlocking 28
Flat load floor 100
Flat tire
– run-flat tires 196
– Tire Pressure Monitor TPM 72
Flat Tire Monitor FTM 69
– indicating a flat tire 71
– initializing the system 70
– snow chains 70
– system limits 70
Flat tires, refer to Tire condition 195
Floor mats, care 206
Floor plate, refer to Flat load floor 100
FM, waveband 132
Fog lamps
– replacing bulb 210
Folding rear seat backrest 98
Footbrake, refer to Braking safely 97
Footwell lamps 82
For your own safety 5
Four-wheel drive, refer to ALL4 69
Front airbags 76
Front fog lamps 81
– replacing bulb 210
Front seat adjustment 38
Frost on windows, refer to Defrosting windows 85, 87
FTM, refer to Flat Tire Monitor 69
Fuel 189
– gauge 55
– high-quality brands 189
– quality 189
– specifications 189
– tank capacity 226
Fuel clock, refer to Fuel gauge 55
Fuel consumption display
– average fuel consumption 56

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

Fuel display, refer to Fuel gauge 55
Fuel filler flap 188
– releasing in the event of electrical malfunction 188
Fuses 216

G

Garage door opener, refer to Integrated universal remote control 88
Gasoline
– refer to Average fuel consumption 56
Gasoline display, refer to Fuel gauge 55
Gasoline, refer to Required fuel 189
Gear indicator
– automatic transmission with Steptronic 48
Gear shifting
– automatic transmission 48
– manual transmission 48
Gearshift lever
– automatic transmission with Steptronic 48
– manual transmission 48
General driving notes 96
Glass roof, electric 34
– convenient operation 28, 29
– opening, closing 35
– remote control 28
– tilting 34
Glove compartment 90
GPS navigation, refer to Navigation system 108
Grills, refer to Air vents 83
Gross vehicle weight, refer to Weights 226

H

Halogen lamps
– replacing bulb 209
Handbrake, refer to Parking brake 47
Hands-free device Bluetooth 154
Hands-free system 14, 160, 172
Hazard warning flashers 14
HD Radio 133
Head airbags 76
Head Light, refer to Adaptive Light Control 80
Head restraints 39
– sitting safely 37
Headlamp control, automatic 79
Headlamp flasher 50
– indicator lamp 11, 13
Headlamp glass lens 209
Headlamps
– replacing bulb 209
Headlamps, care 205
Heated
– mirrors 41
– rear window 84, 86
– seats 40
Heating 83
– mirrors 41
– rear window 84, 86
– seats 40
Heavy loads, refer to Stowing cargo 102
Height adjustment
– seats 38
– steering wheel 42
Height, refer to Dimensions 225
High beams 81
– headlamp flasher 81
– indicator lamp 13
– replacing bulb 209
High water, refer to Driving through water 97
Highway, refer to Route criteria 118
Hill Assist 69
Hills 97
Holders for cups 92
Homepage 4
Hood 198
Horn 10
Hot exhaust system 96
Hydroplaning 97

I

IBOC, refer to HD Radio 133
Ice warning, refer to External temperature warning 56
Ignition 46
– switched off 46
– switched on 46
Ignition key position 1, refer to Radio readiness 46
Ignition key position 2, refer to Ignition on 46
Ignition key, refer to Integrated key/remote control 26
Ignition lock 46
Imprint 2
Incoming call 157, 168
Indicator and warning lamps 13
– Tire Pressure Monitor TPM 73
Indicator lighting, refer to Instrument lighting 81
Individual air distribution 85
Individual settings, refer to Personal Profile 26
Inflation pressure monitoring, refer to Tire Pressure Monitor TPM 72
Information
– on another location 112
– on current position 112
– on destination location 112

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

Initializing
– Flat Tire Monitor FTM 70
– glass roof, electric 35
– radio, refer to Station, storing 133
Instructions for navigation system, refer to Voice instructions 122
Instrument cluster, refer to Displays 12
Instrument lighting 81
Instrument panel, refer to Cockpit 10
Instrument panel, refer to Displays 12
Integrated key 26
Integrated universal remote control 88
Interactive map 114
Interesting destination for navigation 112
Interior lamps 82
– remote control 28
Interior rearview mirror 41
– automatic dimming feature 42
Interlock 48
Intermittent mode of the wipers 51
Internet page 4

J

Jacking points 215
Jets, refer to Window washer nozzles 52
Joystick, refer to On-board computer 16
Jumpering, refer to Jump-starting 218
Jump-starting 218

K

Key Memory, refer to Personal Profile 26
Key, refer to Keys/remote controls 26
Keyless opening and closing, refer to Comfort Access 32
Keyless-Go, refer to Comfort Access 32
Keypad dialing 159, 170
Kickdown 49
– automatic transmission with Steptronic 49
Knock control 189

L

Lamps and bulbs, replacing bulbs 208
Lamps, refer to Parking lamps/ Low beams 79
Lashing eyes, refer to Securing cargo 102
Last destinations 112
LATCH child restraint fixing system 44
Leather care 206
LEDs light-emitting diodes 208
Length, refer to Dimensions 225
License plate lamp
– bulb replacement 212
Liftgate 30
– Comfort Access 33
– opening from outside 30
– opening/closing 30
– unlocking with remote control 28
Light
– automatic headlamp control 79
Light alloy wheels, care 206
Light switch 79
Light-emitting diodes LEDs 208
Lighter 92
– socket 92
Lighting
– lamps and bulbs 208
– of the instruments 81
– of vehicle, refer to Lamps 79
Limit, refer to Speed limit 64
Load 101
Load securing equipment, refer to Securing cargo 102
Lock buttons of doors, refer to Locking 30
Locking
– adjusting confirmation signal 28
– from inside 30
– from outside 28
– without remote control, refer to Comfort Access 32
Locking and unlocking doors
– confirmation signals 28
– from inside 30
– from outside 27
Longlife oils
– approved motor oils 200
Low beams 79
– automatic 79
– replacing bulb 209
Lower back support, refer to Lumbar support 38
Luggage compartment
– doors, refer to Liftgate 30
Luggage compartment partition net, refer to Cargo net 100
Luggage rack, refer to Roof-mounted luggage rack 103
Lumbar support 38

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

M

M+S tires, refer to Winter tires 197
Main menu 17
Maintenance, refer to Service and Warranty Information Booklet for US models and Service Guide Booklet for Canadian models
Maintenance system 202
Malfunction warnings, refer to Check Control 62
Manual air distribution 85
Manual mode
– automatic transmission with Steptronic 49
Manual operation
– door lock 29
– fuel filler flap 188
– transmission lock, automatic transmission 50
Manual transmission 48
Manual washing 205
Map
– changing scale 121
Map for navigation
– entering destination 114
Master key, refer to Integrated key/remote control 26
Maximum cooling 86
Maximum speed
– with winter tires 197
Medical assistance, refer to First aid pouch 218
MENU button 16
Menus, refer to On-board computer 16
Messages 179
Microfilter
– for air conditioner 85
– for automatic climate control 87
– MINI Maintenance System 202
Microfilter/activated-charcoal filter
– MINI Maintenance System 202
Microphone for telephone 14
MINI Connected 183
MINI Internet page 4
MINI joystick, refer to On-board computer 16
MINI Maintenance System 202
Mirror dimming feature 42
Mirrors 41
– exterior mirrors 41
– heating 41
– interior rearview mirror 41
Mobile phone
– adjusting volume 157, 168
– connecting, refer to Mobile phone, pairing 154, 163
– installation location, refer to Center armrest 91
– pairing 154, 163
– What to do if.... 156, 167
Mobile phone, installation location, refer to Center armrest 91
Mobile phone preparation Bluetooth 163
Mobility System 212
Modifications, technical, refer to For your own safety 5
Monitor, refer to MINI controls with navigation 16
Monitoring system for tire pressures, refer to Flat Tire Monitor 69
Multifunction switch
– refer to Turn signals/ headlamp flasher 50
– refer to Wiper system 51
Multifunctional steering wheel, refer to Buttons on the steering wheel 11

N

Navigation
– storing current position 111
Navigation data 108
Navigation destination
– entering manually 109, 115
– home address 112
Navigation instructions, refer to Switching voice instructions on/off 122
Navigation system 108
– address book 111
– bypassing a route section 120
– continuing route guidance 118
– destination entry 109
– dynamic route guidance 125
– entering a destination manually 109, 115
– opening 108
– planning a trip 116
– route list 119
– selecting destination via map 114
– selecting route criteria 118
– special destinations 112
– starting route guidance 118
– terminating route guidance 118
– voice instructions 122
– volume adjustment 122
Neck support, refer to Head restraints 39
Nets, refer to Storage compartments 91
New tires 196
North-facing map 120
Notes 181
Number of cylinders, refer to Engine data 224
Number of safety belts 37
Nylon rope, refer to Tow rope 221

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

O

OBD socket, refer to Socket for On-Board Diagnosis 203
Octane ratings, refer to Fuel specifications 189
Odometer 55
Office 176
– current office 176
– What to do if.... 182
Oil consumption 199
Oil level 199
Oil, refer to Engine oil 199
Oil types 200
Old batteries, refer to Disposal 216
On-board computer 16
– changing language 65
– menu guidance 17
– operating principles 16
– overview 16
– status information 19
Opening and closing
– Comfort Access 32
– from inside 30
– from outside 27
– using the door lock 29
– using the remote control 27
Opening and unlocking
– from inside 30
Options, selecting for navigation 118
Orientation menu, refer to Main menu 17
Outlets
– refer to Ventilation 87
Outlets, refer to Air vents 83
Output, refer to Engine data 224
Outside-air mode
– automatic climate control 86
Overheated engine, refer to Coolant temperature 201

P

Paintwork, care 205
Park Distance Control PDC 66
Parking
– vehicle 47
Parking aid, refer to Park Distance Control PDC 66
Parking brake 47
– indicator lamp 13
Parking lamps, replacing bulb 210
Parking lamps/low beams 79
Parts and accessories, refer to Your individual vehicle 4
Pathway lighting 79
Personal Profile 26
Phone numbers
– dialing 157, 169
Pinch protection system
– windows 36
Plastic parts, care 206
Pollen
– refer to Microfilter for air conditioner 85
– refer to Microfilter/activated-charcoal filter for automatic climate control 87
Power failure 216
Power window
– safety switch 36
Power windows 35
Power windows, refer to Windows 35
Pressure monitoring of tires, refer to Tire Pressure Monitor TPM 72
Pressure monitoring, tires 69
– Flat Tire Monitor 69
Pressure, tires 190
Protective function, refer to Pinch protection system
– windows 36
Puncture
– Flat Tire Monitor 69

R

Radio
– controls 130
– HD Radio 133
– satellite radio 134
– select waveband 132
– storing stations 133
– switching on/off 130
– tone control 131
– volume 130
Radio key, refer to Integrated key/remote control 26
Radio position, refer to Radio readiness 46
Radio readiness 46
– switched off 46
– switched on 46
Rain sensor 51
Random sequence
– external devices 145
Range, refer to Cruising range 56
Reading aloud 182
Reading lamps 82
Rear lamps
– bulb replacement 211
Rear lamps, refer to Tail lamps 211
Rear seat backrest, folding 98
Rear seats
– adjusting 39
– folding down the backrests 98
Rear window
– windshield wiper 52
Rear window defroster 84, 86
Rear window safety switch 36
Rear-mounted luggage rack 103
Rearview mirror, refer to Mirrors 41
Reception
– quality 133
– radio station 133
Recirculated-air mode 84, 86

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

Recirculation of air, refer to Recirculated-air mode 84, 86
Reclining seat, refer to Backrest 38
Refueling 188
Releasing
– hood 198
Reminders 181
Remote control 26
– battery renewal 34
– Comfort Access 32
– garage door opener 88
– liftgate 28
– malfunctions 28, 34
– service data 202
Replacement remote control 26
Replacing bulbs, refer to Lamps and bulbs 208
Replacing tires, refer to New wheels and tires 196
Reporting safety defects 6
Reserve warning, refer to Fuel gauge 55
Reservoir for washer systems 53
Reset, refer to Resetting tone settings 131
Restraint systems
– for children 43
– refer to Safety belts 40
Reverse
– CD player 141
Reverse gear
– automatic transmission with Steptronic 49
– manual transmission 48
Road map 120
Roadside Assistance 218
Roadside parking lamps 81
– replacing bulb 210
Roadworthiness test, refer to Service requirements 59
Roof load capacity 226
Roof-mounted luggage rack 103
Rope, refer to Tow-starting, towing away 221
Route 118, 119
– bypassing sections 120
– changing 118, 120
– changing criteria 118
– displaying arrow view 119
– displaying map view 120
– displaying streets or towns/ cities 119
– selecting 118
Route guidance 118
– bypassing a route section 120
– changing specified route 118
– continuing 118
– distance and arrival 118
– starting 118
– voice instructions 122
– volume of voice instructions 122
Route section, changing 120
Route selection 118
RSC Run-flat System Component, refer to Run-flat tires 196
Rubber parts, care 205
Run-flat System Component RSC, refer to Run-flat tires 196
Run-flat tires 196
– flat tire 71
– Flat Tire Monitor 71
– tire inflation pressure 190
– tire replacement 196
– winter tires 197

S

Safety belt
– number 37
Safety Belt Reminder 41
Safety belts 40
– damage 41
– indicator lamp 41
– reminder 41
– sitting safely 37
Safety belts, care 207
Safety systems
– airbags 76
– Antilock Brake System ABS 67
– driving stability control systems 67
– Dynamic Stability Control DSC 67
– safety belts 40
Safety tires, refer to Run-flat tires 196
Satellite radio 134
– channel, activating or deactivating 135
– channel, selecting 135
– channel, storing 136
– favorites 137
– time shift 136
– Traffic Jump 138
Screen, refer to On-board computer controls 16
Screw thread for tow fitting 220
SDARS, refer to Satellite radio 134
Seat adjustment
– mechanical 38
– rear 39
Seats 38
– adjusting the seats 38
– heating 40
– sitting safely 37
Securing the vehicle
– from inside 30
– from outside 27
Selecting new scale for navigation 121
Selector lever
– automatic transmission with Steptronic 48
Selector lever lock
– automatic transmission with Steptronic, refer to Shiftlock 48
– overriding manually 50

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

Selector lever positions
– automatic transmission with Steptronic 48
Service car, refer to Roadside Assistance 218
Service data in the remote control 202
Service Interval Display, refer to Condition Based Service CBS 202
Service, refer to Roadside Assistance 218
Service requirement display, refer to Condition Based Service CBS 202
Service requirements 59
Setting time and date 61
Setting time zone, time, and date 61
Settings
– clock, 12 h/24 h mode 61
– date format 62
– language 65
Settings and information 57
Shift paddles 49
Shifting gears
– automatic transmission with Steptronic 49
– manual transmission 48
Shiftlock
– automatic transmission, refer to Changing selector lever positions 48
Short commands for the voice activation system 227
Short route in navigation, refer to Selecting route 118
Shuffled, refer to Random
– CD player 141
Side airbags 76
Side marker lamps, replacing bulbs 211
Side turn signal
– replacing bulb 211
Side windows, refer to Windows 35
Signal horn, refer to Horn 10
Sitting safely 37
– airbags 37
– safety belts 37
– with head restraint 37
Size, refer to Dimensions 225
Sliding/tilt sunroof
– refer to Glass roof, electric 34
Slot for remote control 46
Smokers' package, refer to Ashtray 92
Snap-in adapter
– inserting/removing 174
– use 163
Snap-in adapter, refer to Center armrest storage compartment 91
Snow chains 197
Socket for On-Board Diagnosis OBD 203
Socket, refer to Connecting electrical appliances 92
Software update 149
Speaking, refer to Voice instructions from navigation system 122
Special destinations 112
Special oils, refer to Approved engine oils 200
Speed 224
– with winter tires 197
Speed limit 64
– setting 64
Speed limit warning, refer to Speed limit 64
Speed volume 131
Speedo, refer to Speedometer 12
Speedometer 12
Split rear seat backrest, refer to Expanding the cargo area 98
Sport button 69
Stability control, refer to Driving stability control systems 67
Start/Stop button 46
– starting the engine 46
– switching off the engine 47
Starting assistance, refer to Jump-starting 218
Starting, refer to Starting the engine 46
Starting the engine
– Start/Stop button 46
Start-off assistance, refer to
– DSC 67
– Hill Assist 69
State/province, for navigation 109
Station, selecting
– radio 132
Status information on the Control Display 19
Status of this Owner's Manual at time of printing 4
Steering wheel 42
– adjustment 42
– buttons on steering wheel 11
– lock 46
– shift paddles 49
Steptronic, refer to Automatic transmission with Steptronic 48
Storage area
– cargo area 98
Storage compartments 91
Storage space
– storage compartments 91
Storing a destination in the address book 111
Storing the vehicle 207
Storing tires 197
Stowage, refer to Storage compartments 91
Summer tires, refer to Wheels and tires 190
SW, waveband 132
Switches, refer to Cockpit 10
Switching off
– engine 47
Switching off the engine
– Start/Stop button 46

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

Switching on
– audio 130
– CD player 130
– radio 130
Switching the cooling function on and off 87
Symbols 4
– status information 19

T

Tachometer 55
Tail lamp, refer to Tail lamps 211
– replacing bulb 211
Tail lamps 211
Tank volume, refer to Capacities 226
Target cursor for navigation 114
Tasks 180
Technical data 224
Technical modifications 5
Telephone
– hands-free system 160, 172
– installation location, refer to Center armrest 91
– voice commands 172
Telephone receiving power, refer to Status information 19
Temperature display
– setting the units 58
Temperature of coolant, refer to Coolant temperature 201
Temperature setting
– air conditioner 84
– automatic climate control 86
Tempomat, refer to Cruise control 53
Tensioning straps, refer to Securing cargo 102
Text message 179
The individual vehicle 4
Third brake lamp, refer to Center brake lamp 212
Three-point safety belt 40
Tightening the lug bolts
– torque 216
Tightening torque, refer to Tightening lug bolts 216
Tire failure
– Flat Tire Monitor 71
– indicator/warning lamp 71
– MINI Mobility System 212
– run-flat tires 71
– Tire Pressure Monitor 72
Tire inflation pressure 190
– loss 71, 72
Tire Pressure Monitor TPM 72
– limitations of system 72
– resetting system 73
– warning lamp 73
Tire pressure monitoring, refer to Flat Tire Monitor 69
Tire Quality Grading 194
Tires
– age 196
– breaking in 96
– changing, refer to Changing wheels 214
– condition 195
– damage 195
– inflation pressure 190
– inflation pressure loss 73
– minimum tread depth 195
– new tires 196
– pressure monitoring, refer to Flat Tire Monitor 69
– pressure monitoring, refer to Tire Pressure Monitor TPM 72
– puncture 71
– size 194
– wear indicators, refer to Minimum tread depth 195
– winter tires 197
– with emergency operation properties 196
Tires with emergency operation properties, refer to Run-flat tires 196
Tires with safety features, refer to Run-flat tires 196
TMC station, refer to Traffic information 122
Tone
– middle setting 131
Tone during audio playback
– adjusting 131
Torque 224
– lug bolts 216
Tow bar 220
Tow fitting 220
– screw thread 220
Tow fittings for tow-starting and towing away 220
Tow rope 221
Towing 219
– car with automatic transmission 220
– methods 220
Tow-starting 219
TPM, refer to Tire Pressure Monitor 72
Track
– selecting on CD 140
Track width, refer to Dimension 225
Traction control, refer to
– Dynamic Stability Control DSC 67
Traffic bulletins
– categories 124
Traffic bulletins, filtering 124
Traffic congestion
– displaying traffic information 122
– refer to Route, bypassing segments 120
Traffic information for navigation
– displaying 123
Traffic information in navigation
– screen display in the map view 124

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

Transmission
– automatic transmission with Steptronic 48
– manual transmission 48
– overriding selector lever lock for automatic transmission with Steptronic 50
Transport securing devices, refer to Securing cargo 102
Transporting children safely 43
Tread depth, refer to Minimum tire tread 195
Treble, refer to Tone control 131
Trip computer 57
Trip odometer 55
Trip-distance counter, refer to Trip odometer 55
Triple turn signal activation 50
Turn signal 50
– front, replacing bulb 210
– indicator lamp 12, 13
– rear, replacing bulb 211
– side, replacing bulb 211
Turning circle, refer to Dimensions 225
Tying down loads, refer to Cargo loading 102

U

Uniform Tire Quality Grading UTQR 194
Units
– average fuel consumption 58
– temperature 58
Universal garage door opener, refer to Integrated universal remote control 88
Universal remote control 88
Unlatching, refer to Unlocking 33
Unlocking
– from inside 30
– from outside 27
– liftgate 33
– setting unlocking behavior 27
– without remote control, refer to Comfort Access 32
Updating the navigation data 108
Upholstery, care 206
USB audio interface 143
USB interface 90

V

Vehicle
– battery 216
– breaking in 96
– cargo loading 98
– dimensions 225
– identification number, refer to Engine compartment 199
– parking 47
– storage 207
– weight 226
Vehicle jack
– jacking points 215
Ventilation
– air conditioner 87
Ventilation, refer to Climate control 83
Vents, refer to Air vents 83
Vents, refer to Ventilation 87
Voice commands
– overview 21
– short commands 227
– telephone 172
Voice instructions for navigation system 122
– repeating 122
– switching on/off 122
– volume 122
Voice phone book 173
Volume 130
– audio sources 130
– mobile phone 157, 168
– voice instructions 122
Volume balance, tone setting 131
Volume of cargo area 226

W

Warning and indicator lamps 13
Warning messages, refer to Check Control 62
Warning triangle 218
Washer fluid 53
– capacity of reservoir 53
Washer fluid reservoir 53
Washer/wiper system
– washer fluid 53
Waste tray, refer to Ashtray 92
Water on roads, refer to Driving through water 97
Waterfall lighting, refer to Ambient lighting 82
Waveband for radio 132
Wear indicators in tires, refer to Minimum tread depth 195
Weights 226
Welcome lamps 79
Wheelbase, refer to Dimensions 225
Wheels and tires 190
Wheels, new 196
Width, refer to Dimensions 225
Window washer, refer to Washer fluid 53
Window washer reservoir, refer to Washer fluid
– volume, refer to Capacities 226
Window washer system 51
– washer fluid 53
– washer jets 52

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

Windows 35
– closing 35
– convenient operation 28
– opening 35
– pinch protection system 36
– safety switch 36
Windows, indicator on Control Display 16
Windshield
– cleaning 52
– defrosting and removing condensation 85, 87
Windshield wiper blades, changing 208
Windshield wipers, refer to Wiper system 51
Winter tires 197
– setting speed limit 64
– storage 197
Wiper blade replacement 208
Wiper system 51
Word matching principle for navigation 116
Work in the engine compartment 198

X

Xenon lamps
– replacing bulb 209

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG

01 40 2 607 549 ue

DRIVE ME.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 607 549 - © 03/11 BMW AG